



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

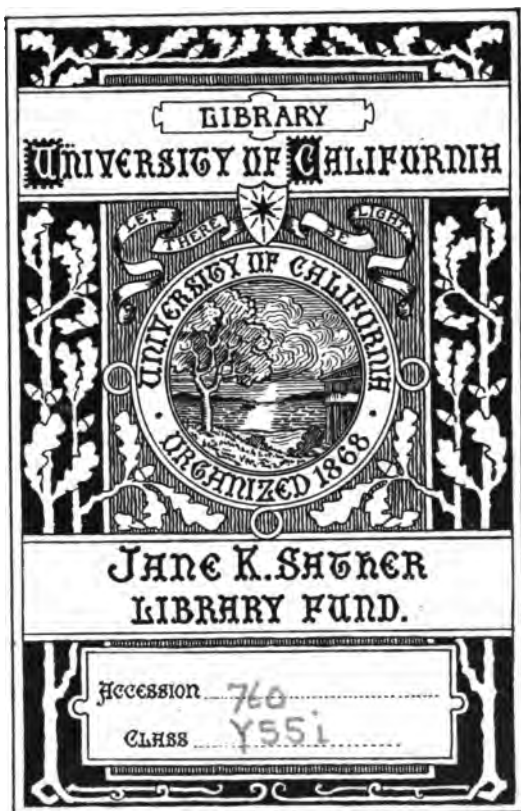
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

UC-NRLF



\$B 257 384



AN INTRODUCTION
TO THE
LATIN TONGUE,
FOR THE USE OF YOUTH.

A NEW EDITION

BY C. D. YONGE, B. A.

AUTHOR OF

"AN ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON," "YONGE'S GRADUS AD PARNASSUM,"
ETC. ETC.



ETON: WILLIAMS & SON;

LONDON: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND Co.

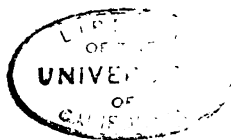
MDCCCLXXIV.

SATHER

INDEX.

PA 2087
E8
1874
MAIN

	Pag.		Pag.
Alphabet	5	QUÆ GENUS ; or, Nouns Heteroclitæ	77
Parts of Speech	6	AS IN PRÆSENTI ; or, the Perfect and Supines of Verbs	80
NOUNS—		SYNTAXIS—	
Numbers, Cases, &c.	ib.	Concordantiæ Tres	88
Declension of Substantives	8	Nominum Constructio—	
„ Adjectives	15	Substantiva	92
Comparison of Adjectives	19	Adjectiva	93
Pronouns	21	Pronominum Constructio	98
Declension of	22	Verborum Constructio	99
VERBS—		Verba Infinita	107
Voices	24	Gerundia	109
Moods	25	Supina	110
Tenses	26	Verba Impersonalia	ib.
Gerunds and Supines	27	De Tempore	111
Participles	ib.	Spatium Loci	112
Numbers and Persons	28	Nomina Locorum	ib.
The Verb <i>Esse</i>	ib.	Adverbiorum Constructio	113
Declension of Verbs <i>Regular</i>	31	Conjunctionum Constructio	114
Conjugation of ditto—Active	32	De Relativo	118
„ „ Passive	45	Præpositionum Constructio	119
Declension of <i>Irregular</i>		Interjectionum Constructio	121
Verbs	58	PROSODIA	122
Conjugation of ditto	ib.		
<i>Defective</i> Verbs	63	Propria quæ Maribus	
Adverbs	65	construed	132
Conjunctions	ib.	Nouns Heteroclitæ construed	140
Prepositions	66	As in Præsentî construed	144
Interjections	68	Syntaxis construed	157
The Three Concords	ib.	Prosodia construed	206
PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS ; or, the Genders of Nouns	73		



AN INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN TONGUE.

The Latin Letters are thus written :

Capitals.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Small, or common.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Of these Letters, six are named *Vowels* ; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

The rest are called *consonants*.

A *vowel* makes a full and perfect sound of itself, as *e.*

A *consonant* cannot be sounded without a vowel, as *be.*

Consonants are divided into liquids, double letters, and mutes.

The *liquids* are *l, m, n, r* : The *double letters* are *j, x, z* :

The remaining letters are called *mutes*.

A *syllable* is a distinct sound of one, or more letters, pronounced in a breath.

A *diphthong* is the sound of two vowels in one syllable.

There are six diphthongs, *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe.**

* Besides these six we meet with *ua, ue, ui, uo*, sounded in one syllable, occurring only after the consonants, *g, q, or s* ; but they want one distinguishing property of diphthongs, for diphthongs are naturally *long* in quantity, while these are sometimes long and sometimes short. And some consider that in these combinations *u* should be considered a consonant, and written *v*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech are Seven :

Noun, Pronoun, Verb, declined ;

Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, undeclined.

OF A NOUN.

NOUNS are of two kinds, *Substantives* and *Adjectives*.

A *substantive* expresses by itself alone the object of which we are speaking ; as, *hōmo*,* a man ; *orātor*, an orator ; *liber*, the book.

An *adjective* always requires to be joined to a substantive, of which it shows the nature or quality ; and is either a common adjective ; as, *bōnus puer*, a good boy ; or a *participle* (formed from, and being part of a verb) ; as, *fūrens fœmina*, a woman raging.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have two numbers ; the singular, and the plural.

The singular speaketh but of one ; as *pāter*, a father

The plural speaketh of more than one ; as, *patres*, fathers.

CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have six cases in each number :

The nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative.

The *nominative* case names the subject of a sentence, and marks the quarter from which an action proceeds ; as, *magister docet*, the master teaches.

The *genitive* case denotes connection between two objects, and in English is commonly translated by "of," or by 's ; as, *doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master, or the master's learning.

The *dative* case denotes that with reference to which the subject (named by the nominative case) acts ; or in

* A crescent (◌) placed over a vowel denotes that the syllable is *short* ; a straight line (◌) denotes that it is *long*.

reference to which it possesses this or that quality: and in English it is commonly expressed by the sign “to” or “for,” pointing out the person to whose advantage or disadvantage the thing spoken of tends; as, *do librum magistro*, I give the book to the master; *patriæ suæ idoneus*, useful to his country.

The *accusative* case expresses the object, whether person or thing, affected by the action spoken of; as, *amo magistrum*, I love the master; *condo domum*, I build a house.

The *vocative* case is used in addressing people or things; as, *O magister*, O master.

The *ablative* case serves to denote the person or thing from whom or from which anything is taken; and also many other relations of substantives, which are expressed in most other languages by prepositions, such as, “in,” “with,” “from,” or “by.” Also, the word “than” after an adjective of the comparative degree is often a sign of the ablative case; as, *cum magistro*, with the master; *in Italiâ*, in Italy; *vir fortior Cæsare*, a man braver than Cæsar.

GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

The GENDERS of nouns are three; the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

Some substantives are called *common*, being such as denote an occupation or quality common to both males and females, and admitting adjectives of either the masculine or feminine gender to be joined with them, according as the subject is male or female; as, *meus parens*, or *mea parens*, “my parent,” according as the father or mother is spoken of.

Some are called *epicene*, being such as have only one grammatical gender, which comprehends both sexes; as, *hic passer*, this sparrow; *hæc aquila*, this eagle; without regard to the difference of sex.

Some are called *doubtful*, being such as are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, without regard to the actual sex of the animal spoken of; as, *hic anguis* or *hæc anguis*, this snake.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are FIVE declensions of substantives, distinguished by the ending of the genitive case.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The First declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *æ*, and has the nominative case ending in *ā*, of either the masculine or feminine gender ; as, *scrība*, a scribe ; *via*, a way ; or, (in the case of words derived from Greek, being mostly proper names) in *as* or *es* of the masculine, and in *ē* of the feminine gender. These last make the genitive singular to end in *ēs*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N.	Mūs-a, <i>a song</i> ,	N. Mūs-æ, <i>songs</i> ,
G.	Mūs-æ, <i>of a song</i> ,*	G. Mūs-ārum, <i>of songs</i> ,
D.	Mūs-æ, <i>to a song</i> ,	D. Mūs-is, <i>to songs</i> ,
Acc.	Mūs-am, <i>a song</i> ,	A. Mūs-as, <i>songs</i> ,
V.	Mūs-a, <i>o song</i> ,	V. Mūs-æ, <i>o songs</i> ,
Abl.	Mūs-ā, <i>from a song</i> .	A. Mūs-is, <i>from songs</i> .

N.	Ænēas,	Anchīses,	Pēnēlōpē,
G.	Ænēæ,	Anchīsæ,	Pēnēlōpēs,
D.	Ænēæ,	Anchīsæ,	Pēnēlōpæ,
Acc.	Ænēān,	Anchīsēn,	Pēnēlōpēn,
V.	Ænēā,	Anchīsā,†	Pēnēlōpē,
Abl.	Ænēā.	Anchīsā.	Pēnēlōpē.

One or two feminine substantives in *ā*, derived from masculines in *us*, make the dat. and abl. plural in *abus* as well as in *is* ; as, *filia*, a daughter, *filiabus* or *filiis*.

Also feminine proper names ending in *ā*, derived from the Greek, are used in Latin (especially by the poets) with either accusative *an* or *am* ; and *an*, when used, follows the quantity of the Greek accusative, so that we find *Maiān*, *Electrān*.

* The Epic Poets occasionally retain the older form, which used to end in *aī* ; as, *Aulāī* in medio, for *Aulæ*. Virg.

† Horace in his Satires uses this vocative case with *ā*.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The second declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *i*, and the nominative to end in *ēr* and *īr* of the masculine gender only ; as, *puer*, a boy ; *māgister*, a teacher ; *vir*, a man : in *us*, usually of the masculine gender ; as, *dōmīnus*, a master ; but sometimes of the feminine ; as, *hūmus*, the ground ; or of the neuter, as, *vīrus*,* poison : in *um* of the neuter gender only ; as, *regnum*, a kingdom : and (in the case of a few proper names derived from the Greek) in *ōs* of the masculine or feminine gender, as, *Dēlōs* ; and in *ōn* of the neuter, as, *Iliōn*.

Singular.

N. *Puer*, a boy,
G. *Puēri*, of a boy,
D. *Puēro*, to a boy,
A. *Puērum*, a boy,
V. *Puer*, o boy,
A. *Puēro*, by a boy.

Plural.

N. *Puēri*, boys,
G. *Puērōrum*, of boys,
D. *Puēris*, to boys,
A. *Puēros*, boys,
V. *Puēri*, o boys,
A. *Puēris*, by boys.

Singular.

N. *Dōmīnus*, a master,
G. *Dōmīni*, of a master,
D. *Dōmīno*, to a master,
A. *Dōmīnum*, a master,
V. *Dōmīne*, o master,
A. *Dōmīno*, by a master.

Plural.

N. *Dōmīni*, masters,
G. *Dōmīnōrum*, of masters,
D. *Dōmīnis*, to masters,
A. *Dōmīnos*, masters,
V. *Dōmīni*, o masters,
A. *Dōmīnis*, by masters.

Singular.

N. *Māgister*, a teacher,
G. *Māgistri*, of a teacher,
D. *Māgistro*, to a teacher,
A. *Māgistrum*, a teacher,
V. *Māgister*, o teacher,
A. *Māgistro*, by a teacher.

Plural.

N. *Māgistri*, teachers,
G. *Māgistrōrum*, of teachers,
D. *Māgistris*, to teachers,
A. *Māgistros*, teachers,
V. *Māgistri*, o teachers,
A. *Māgistris*, by teachers.

* Nouns of the neuter gender of this declension ending in *us* make the accusative and vocative singular to end in *us*, and have no plural ; except that Lucretius has *Pēlāgē* as the accusative plural of *Pēlāgus*.

Singular.

- N. Regn-um, *a kingdom*,
 G. Regn-i, *of a kingdom*,
 D. Regn-o, *to a kingdom*,
 A. Regn-um, *a kingdom*,
 V. Regn-um, *o kingdom*,
 A. Regn-o, *from a kingdom*.

- N. Dēlōs,
 G. Dēli,
 D. Dēlo,
 A. Dēlōn,
 V. Dēlē,
 A. Dēlo.

Plural.

- N. Regn-a, *kingdoms*,
 G. Regn-ōrum, *of kingdoms*,
 D. Regn-is, *to kingdoms*,
 A. Regn-a, *kingdoms*,
 V. Regn-a, *o kingdoms*,
 A. Regn-is, *from kingdoms*.

- Iliōn,
 Ilii,
 Ilio,
 Iliōn,
 Iliōn,
 Ilio.

The genitive case of words ending in *ius* or *ium* was originally *i*, not *ii*, and *ii* is never used by Virgil or Horace (except in the case of the adjective *ēgrēgii*,) though it occurs occasionally in Ovid.

The vocative of words ending in *us* terminates in *e*, except *Deus*, God, which makes *Deus* in the vocative; and words in *ius*, which make the vocative in *i*; as, *filius*, a son, *filī*. But proper names derived from the Greek ending in *ius* make the vocative in *e*; as, *Cynthius*, *Cynthie*.

All nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike in both numbers. And all nouns whatever, except those of the first declension ending in *as* or *es*, and those of the second ending in *us* or *ōs*, make the nominative and vocative alike in both numbers.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The third declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *is*, and in the nominative it ends in *e*, *o* (and in words derived from the Greek in *a*, *i*, and *y*,) *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, and *x*, of which those ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *t*, are of the neuter gender only (except *Præneste*, which, as the name of a town, is used also in the feminine.) Those with the other terminations are of various genders, except that those ending in *o*, *ns*, and *x*, are never neuter.

Of nouns of this declension some are *parisyllabic* (that is, they do not increase in the genitive case,) as, *nūbes, nūbis*; some are *imparisyllabic* (that is, they do increase in the genitive case,) as, *lapis, lapidis*.* Some

* In the case of imparisyllabic words, there is a great variety in the manner in which the increase in the genitive case is formed: the following are some of the principal varieties. Words ending in—

a make the gen. in *ātis, as poēma, poemātis.*

o *īnis, as virgo, virgīnis.*

ōnis, as leo, leōnis.

ōnis, as Mācēdo, Mācēdōnis.

y *yōs, as Tīphys, Tīphyōs.*

c *ctis, as lac, lactis.*

l *lis, as ānimal, ānīmālis; sal, sālis; mel, mellis.*

an *ānis, as Tītān, Tītānis.*

ēn *ēnis, as Sīrēn, Sīrēnis.*

in *īnis, as Delphīn, Delphīnis.*

ēn *īnis, as carmēn, carmīnis.*

ōn *ōnis, as Mārāthon, Mārāthōnis.*

ōnis, as cānōn, cānōnis.

ontis, as Xenophon, Xenophontis.

r by adding *is, as calcar, calcāris.*

jūbar, jubāris.

carcer, carcēris.

ver, vēris.

hōnor, hōnōris.

æquor, æquōris.

fur, fūris.

murmur, murmūris; but far makes farris;

īter, ītīnēris; Jūpīter, Jōvis; cor, cor-

dis; rōbur, rōbōris.

as in *ātis, as pietās, pietātis:*

but in words derived from the Greek—

in *ādis, as lampās, lampādis.*

antis, as gīgas, gīgantis.

We find also *mas, māris; vas, vās; vas, vādis; as, assis.*

ēs in *ītis, as mīlēs, mīlītis.*

ēs in *ētis, as sēgēs, sēgētis.*

We find also *quies, quietis; pes, pēdis; hæres, hærēdis; Cērēs-*

Cērēris.

is in *ēris, as cīnis, cīnēris.*

īdis, as lapis, lāpīdis.

We find also *lis, lītis; sanguis, sanguīnis; glīs, gliris.*

ns } by changing *e* into *is*, { *as pārens, pārentis.*

rs } *ars, artis.*

So also we find *trabs, trābis; urbs, urbis; hyems, hyēmīs; cœlebs,*

cœlībīs; princeps, princīpīs; but frons-

(a leaf,) frondīs; glans, glandīs.

parisyllabic nouns ending in *is* make the accusative case singular to end in *im*,* as, *turris*, *turrim*; and these and some others make the ablative to end both in *i* and *e*, as, *puppis*, abl. *puppi* and *puppe* (one, *vis*, makes only *vi*.) All nouns of the neuter gender form their nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *a*; those which end in *al*, *ar* (except *far*,) and *e*, make them in *ia*. And such words, and most parisyllabic substantives of this declension, form their genitive case plural in *ium*.†

Words ending in

ūs make the gen. in *ōris*, as *flōs*, *flōris*.

ōtis, *ās* *dos*, *dōtis*.

also *os* (a bone,) *ossis*.

oīs, as *heros* (borrowed from the Greek,) *herois*.

us, when neut. in *ēris*, as *opus*, *opēris*.

ōris, as *pecus*, *pecōris*.

when fem. in *ūtis*, as *virtūs*, *virtūtis*.

ūdis, as *pecus*, *pecūdis*.

We find also *Vēnus*, *Vēneris*; *grus*, *gruis*: and the masculine *mus*, *mūris*.

x in *cis*, as *pax*, *pācis*.

fax, *fācis*.

vervex, *vervēcis*,

nex, *nēcis*.

cornix, *cornīcis*.

cālix, *cālicis*.

vox, *vōcis*.

Cappadox, *Cappādōcis*.

lux, *lūcis*.

nux, *nūcis*.

lynx, *lynēis*.

But *ex* makes also *īcis*, as *lātex*, *lātīcis*; we find also *rex*, *rēgis*; *grex*, *grēgis*; *rēmex*, *rēmīgis*; *nix*, *nīvis*; *nox*, *noctis*; *Phryx*, *Phrýgis*.

* Some, being chiefly Greek proper names, make the accusative singular in *in*, as *Pāris*, *Pārīn*, and these make the vocative in *ī*, as *Pārī*. Some imparisyllabic words also, derived from the Greek, being chiefly proper names, make the accusative singular to end in *ā*; and if they have a plural number, the plural nominative ends in *ēs*, and the accusative in *ās*, as *Pallās*, the goddess, *Pallādā*; *Pallās*, the man, *Pallanta*; *lampās*, acc. sing. *lampāda*, nom. and voc. pl. *lampādēs*, acc. *lampādās*. These words also sometimes are used by the poets with the dative case plural in *āsīn*, as *Trōās*, a Trojan woman, *Trōādā*. *Trōādēs*, *Trōāsīn*, *Trōādās*.

† *Vātes*, *sēnex*, *jūvenis*, *āpis*, *cān is*, *vōlūcris*, are exceptions to this rule, and form their genitive plural in *ium*, not in *ium*. Most nouns of one syllable make the genitive plural in *um*; those of two or more syllables ending in *ns* or *rs*, make it both in *ium* and *um*. the former being the most common form in prose.

Proper names ending in *as*, *antis*, make the vocative case singular to end in *ā*, as *Calchas*, *Calchantis*, voc. *Calchā*; and those in *es*, *is*, make it *ēs* and in *ē*, and make the accusative in *em* or in *ēn*; as, *Sophocles*, *Sophoclis*, accus. *Sophoclem* or *Sophoclen*, voc. *Sophocles* or *Sophoclē*.

Singular.

N. Nūbes, *a cloud*,
G. Nūbis, *of a cloud*,
D. Nūbi, *to a cloud*,
A. Nūbem, *a cloud*,
V. Nūbes, *o cloud*,
A. Nūbe, *by a cloud*.

Singular.

N. Lāpis, *a stone*,
G. Lāpīdis, *of a stone*,
D. Lāpīdi, *to a stone*,
A. Lāpīdem, *a stone*,
V. Lāpis, *o stone*,
A. Lāpīde, *by a stone*.

Singular.

N. ōpus, *a work*,
G. ōpēris, *of a work*,
D. ōpēri, *to a work*,
A. ōpus, *a work*,
V. ōpus, *o work*,
A. ōpēre, *by a work*.

Singular.

N. Māre, *a sea*,
G. Māris, *of a sea*,
D. Māri, *to a sea*,
A. Māre, *a sea*,
V. Māre, *o sea*,
A. Māri, or Māre, *by the sea*.

Plural.

N. Nūbes, *clouds*,
G. Nūbium, *of clouds*,
D. Nūbībus, *to clouds*,
A. Nūbes, *clouds*,
V. Nūbes, *o clouds*,
A. Nūbībus, *by clouds*.

Plural.

N. Lāpīdes, *stones*,
G. Lāpīdum, *of stones*,
D. Lāpīdībus, *to stones*,
A. Lāpīdes, *stones*,
V. Lāpīdes, *o stones*,
A. Lāpīdībus, *by stones*.

Plural.

N. ōpēra, *works*,
G. ōpērum, *of works*,
D. ōpērībus, *to works*,
A. ōpēra, *works*,
V. ōpēra, *o works*,
A. ōpērībus, *by works*.

Plural.

N. Māria, *seas*,
G. Mārium, *of seas*,
D. Mārībus, *to seas*,
A. Māria, *seas*,
V. Māria, *o seas*,
A. Mārībus, *by seas*.

Besides these words, there are some proper names derived from the Greek, which belong mainly to the second declension, but have some cases (especially in poetry) which belong to the third:

N. Orpheus,
 G. Orphei, or Orpheōs,
 D. Orpheo, or Orphēi, contr. Orphē,
 A. Orpheum, or Orphēā, contr. Orphae,
 V. Orpheu,
 A. Orpheo.

Sappho is thus declined :

N. Sappho,
 G. Sapphōs,
 D. Sappho,
 A. Sappho,
 V. Sappho,
 A. Sappho.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ūs*, and in the nominative ends in *us*, being of either the masculine or feminine gender ; or in *u*, of the neuter gender.

Singular.

N. Grād-us, *a step*,
 G. Grād-ūs, *of a step*,
 D. Grād-ui, *to a step*,
 A. Grād-um, *a step*,
 V. Grād-us, *o step*,
 A. Grād-u, *with a step*.

Plural.

N. Grād-us, *steps*,
 G. Grād-uum, *of steps*,
 D. Grād-ibus, *to steps*,
 A. Grād-us, *steps*,
 V. Grād-us, *o steps*,
 A. Grād-ibus, *with steps*.

The dative in *ui* is sometimes contracted into *ū*, both in poetry and prose, as, *Parce metū*.—Virg.

Singular.

N. Cornu, *a horn*,
 G. Cornūs, *of a horn*,*
 D. Cornui, *to a horn*,*
 A. Cornu, *a horn*,
 V. Cornu, *o horn*,
 A. Cornu, *with a horn*.

Plural.

N. Cornua, *horns*,
 G. Cornuum, *of horns*,
 D. Cornibus, *to horns*,
 A. Cornua, *horns*,
 V. Cornua, *o horns*,
 A. Cornibus, *with horns*.

Dōmus, a house, belongs partly to the fourth declension and partly to the second.

* But the genitive and dative cases singular of words in *u* are scarcely ever found.

Singular.

- N. Dömus, *a house*,
 G. Dömûs, *of a house*,
 D. Dömui & dömo, *to a house*,
 A. Dömum, *a house*,
 V. Dömus, *o house*,
 A. Dömo, *by a house*.

Plural.

- N. Dömus, *houses*,
 G. Dömuum and dömorum, *of houses*,
 D. Dömibus, *to houses*,
 A. Dömos, *houses*,
 V. Dömus, *o houses*,
 A. Dömibus, *by houses*.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *ei*, and in the nominative ends in *es*, being always of the feminine gender, with the exception of *dies*, a day, which is masculine and feminine in the singular, and only masculine in the plural ; as,

Singular.

- N. Făci-es, *a face*;
 G. Făci-ēi, *of a face*,
 D. Făci-ēi, *to a face*,
 A. Făci-em, *a face*,
 V. Făci-es, *o face*,
 A. Făci-ē, *from a face*.

Plural.

- N. Făci-es, *faces*,
 G. Făci-ērum, *of faces*,
 D. Făci-ēbus, *to faces*,
 A. Făci-es, *faces*,
 V. Făci-es, *o faces*,
 A. Făci-ēbus, *from faces*.

The termination of the genitive singular in *ei* is sometimes contracted in poetry into *ē* ; as, “ *Libra diē somnique pares ubi fecerit horas.* ”—Virg.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives are declined like substantives, and have either three terminations, masculine, feminine, and neuter ; or two, the one masculine and feminine, and the other neuter ; or one termination only, serving for the three genders. Most adjectives of three terminations are declined in the masculine and neuter genders, like substantives of the second declension, and in the feminine like substantives of the first declension ; as, *bōnus*, good ; *tēner*, tender ; *āter*, black.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bön-us,	bon-a,	bon-um,	N. Bön-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
G. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-i,	G. Bon-órum,	bon-árum,	bon-
D. Bon-o,	bon-æ,	bon-o,	D. Bon-is,		[órum,
A. Bon-um,	bon-am,	bon-um,	A. Bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-a,
V. Bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um,	V. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
A. Bon-o,	bon-â,	bon-o.	A. Bon-is.		

Meus, mine, makes in the vocative case sing. mas. *meus*, and *mí*,* not *mee*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Tën-er,	teně-ra,	teně-rum,	N. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra,
G. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ri,	G. Tene-rórum,	tene-rárum,	
D. Tene-ro,	tene-ræ,	tene-ro,	D. Tene-ris,		[tene-rórum,
A. Tene-rum,	-ram,	-rum,	A. Tene-ros,	tene-ras,	tene-ra,
V. Ten-er,	tene-ra,	tene-rum,	V. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra,
A. Tene-ro,	tene-râ,	tene-ro.	A. Tene-ris.		

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Āter,	atra,	atrum,	N. Atri,	atræ,	atra,
G. Atri,	atræ,	atri,	G. Atorum,	atrarum,	atorum,
D. Atro,	atræ,	atro,	D. Atris,		
A. Atrum,	atram,	atrum,	A. Atros,	atras,	atra,
V. Ater,	atra,	atrum,	V. Atri,	atræ,	atra,
A. Atro,	atrâ,	atro.	A. Atris.		

Some adjectives in *er*, however, are declined in all the three genders like substantives of the third declension ; as, *ācer*, active.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ācer,	acris,	acre,	N. Acres,	acres,	acria,
G. Acris,			G. Acrum,		
D. Acri,			D. Acrībus,		
A. Acrem,	acrem,	acre,	A. Acres,	acres,	acria,
V. Acer,	acris,	acre,	V. Acres,	acres,	acria,
A. Acri.			A. Acrībus.		

* *Mí* in the inferior Authors is occasionally used for the vocative of any gender of either number.

Unus one, *solus* alone, *totus* the whole, *ullus* any, *nullus* none, *alter** the other, *uter* whether of the two, make the genitive case singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*; as,†

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ūn-us</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,	<i>un-um</i> ,	N. <i>Un-i</i> ,	<i>un-æ</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,
G. <i>Un-īus</i> ,			G. <i>Un-órum</i> ,	<i>-árum</i> ,	<i>órum</i> ,
D. <i>Un-ī</i> ,			D. <i>Un-is</i> ,		
A. <i>Un-um</i> ,	<i>un-am</i> ,	<i>un-um</i> ,	A. <i>Un-os</i> ,	<i>un-as</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,
V. <i>Un-e</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,	<i>un-um</i> ,	V. <i>Un-i</i> ,	<i>un-æ</i> ,	<i>un-a</i> ,
A. <i>Un-o</i> ,	<i>un-ā</i> ,	<i>un-o</i> .	A. <i>Un-is</i> .		

Note. *Unus* has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular number; as, *unæ literæ*, a letter; *una mænia*, a wall.

Adjectives of two terminations are declined like substantives of the third declension; as, *tristis* sad, *melior* better.

Singular.		Plural.	
M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
N. <i>Trist-is</i> ,	<i>trist-e</i> ,	N. <i>Trist-es</i> ,	<i>trist-ia</i> ,
G. <i>Trist-is</i> ,		G. <i>Trist-ium</i> ,	
D. <i>Trist-i</i> ,		D. <i>Trist-ibus</i> ,	
A. <i>Trist-em</i> ,	<i>trist-e</i> ,	A. <i>Trist-es</i> ,	<i>trist-ia</i> ,
V. <i>Trist-is</i> ,	<i>trist-e</i> ,	V. <i>Trist-es</i> ,	<i>trist-ia</i> ,
A. <i>Trist-i</i> ,	<i>very rarely tristē</i> .†	A. <i>Trist-ibus</i> .	

* *Alteræ* is also used as the dat. sing. fem. of *alter*, by Corn. Nepos.

† So also words compounded of *uter*, as *neuter*, neither; *uterque*, each, fem. *utraque*, neut. *utrumque*. *Alius*, another, also makes *ālius* in the genitive case, *ālī* dat.; it also makes *āliud*, nom. and acc. sing. neut.

‡ There are in poetry a few instances of adjectives in *is* making the ablative in *e*, but they are very rare; and in adjectives of one termination, the ablative usually ends in *i*, except in words ending in *x*, increasing short, or in *ens* or *ans*, whose ablative most commonly ends in *e*, though *i* also is found, and except *pauper*, *senex*, *juvenis*, and *princeps*, and adjectives ending in *ēs*, as *superstēs*, which make the ablative in *e* only.

Singular.

M.F.	N.
N. Mēli-or,	mēli-us,
G. Mēli-ōris,	
D. Mēli-ōri,	
A. Mēli-ōrem,	mēli-us,
V. Mēli-or,	mēli-us,
A. Mēli-ōre,	or mēli-ōri.

Plural.

M.F.	N.
N. Mēli-ōres,	meli-ōra,
G. Mēli-ōrum,	
D. Mēli-ōrībus,	
A. Mēli-ōres,	mēli-ōra,
V. Mēli-ōres,	mēli-ōra,
A. Mēli-ōrībus.	

Adjectives of one termination, which however have two in acc. sing. and in nom. acc. and voc. pl. are also declined like substantives of the third declension, as *fēlix* happy, *ingens* vast.—And some have no neuter gender at all, except in particular cases, of which the most common are the dat. and abl. sing. and have never any distinctive neuter termination; as, *mēmōr* mindful, *sūperstēs* surviving.

Singular.

M.F.	N.
N. Fēl-ix,	
G. Fēlī-cis,	
D. Fēlī-ci,	
A. Fēlī-cem,	fēl-ix,
V. Fēl-ix,	
A. Fēlī-ci,	or feli-ce.

Plural.

M.F.	N.
N. Fēlī-ces,	fēlī-cia,
G. Fēlī-cium,	
D. Fēlī-cībus,	
A. Fēlī-ces,	fēlī-cia,
V. Fēlī-ces,	fēlī-cia,
A. Fēlī-cībus.	

Singular.

M.F.	N.
N. Ingens,	
G. Ingentis,	
D. Ingenti,	
A. Ingentem,	ingens,
V. Ingens,	
A. Ingenti,	or ingente.

Plural.

M.F.	N.
N. Ingentes,	ingentia,
G. Ingentium,	
D. Ingentībus,	
A. Ingentes,	ingentia,
V. Ingentes,	ingentia,
A. Ingentībus.	

Singular.

N. Mēmōr,	
G. Mēmōris,	
D. Mēmōri,	
A. Mēmōrem,	
V. Mēmōr,	
A. Mēmōre,	or mēmōri.

Plural.

N. Mēmōres,	
G. Mēmōrum,	
D. Mēmōrībus,	
A. Mēmōres,	
V. Mēmōres,	
A. Mēmōrībus.	

Ambo both, and *duo* two, are nouns adjective, and are thus declined, in the plural number only :

N. Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	<i>both.</i>
G. Amb-ōrum,	amb-ārum,	amb-ōrum,	<i>of both.</i>
D. Amb-ōbus,	amb-ābus,	amb-ōbus,	<i>to both.</i>
A. Amb-os,	amb-as,	amb-o,	<i>both.</i>
V. Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	<i>both.</i>
A. Amb-ōbus,	amb-ābus,	amb-ōbus,	<i>with both.</i>

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of signification, or comparison; the positive, the comparative, and the superlative :

I. The positive denotes the quality of a thing absolutely; as, *doctus* learned, *brēvis* short.

II. The comparative increases, or lessens the quality; as, *doctior* more learned, *brēvior* shorter, or more short :

And it is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or* in the masculine and feminine genders, and *us* in the neuter ; as, of

Doctus, gen. *docti*, is formed *doctior*, more learned :
of

Brēvis, dat. *brēvi*, is formed *brēvior*, shorter.

III. The superlative increases, or diminishes the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree; as, *doctissimus* most learned, or very learned ; *brevisissimus* shortest, most short, or very short :

And it is formed also of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus* ; as, of

Gen. *docti*, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned.

Dat. *brēvi*, is formed *brēvissimus*, shortest.

Note. Many Adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparisons irregularly ; as,

<i>Bonus</i> , good ;	<i>mēlior</i> ,	better ;	<i>optimus</i> , best.
<i>Mālus</i> , bad ;	<i>pējor</i> ,	worse ;	<i>pessimus</i> , worst.
<i>Magnus</i> , great ;	<i>mājor</i> ,	greater ;	<i>maximus</i> , greatest.
<i>Parvus</i> , little ;	<i>mīnor</i> ,	less ;	<i>minimus</i> , least.
<i>Multus</i> , much ;	<i>plus</i> ,	more ;	<i>plūrimus</i> , most.

Nēquam, wicked ; *nēquior*, more wicked ; *nēquissimus*, most wicked.

Dives, rich ; *divitior*, or *dītior*, more rich ; *divitissimus*, or *dītissimus*, most rich.

Extērus, outward ; *extērior*, more outward ; *extrēmus*, and *extimus*, uttermost, or most outward.

Inferus, low ; *inferior*, lower, or more low ; *infimus*, and *imus*, lowest, or most low.

Sūpērus, high ; *sūpērior*, higher, or more high ; *suprēmus*, or *summus*, highest, or most high.

Postērus, subsequent ; *postērior*, later ; *postrēmus*, last.

Dexter, on the right hand ; *dextērior*, *dextimus*, both in nearly the same sense as the positive.

Jūvēnis, young ; *jūnior*, younger, or more young.

Sēnex, old ; *sēnior*, older, or more old.

Adjectives in *-dīcus*, *-fīcus*, *-vōlus*, derived from the verbs *dico*, *facio*, *volo*, form their comparisons in *-entior* and *-entissimus*, as if from the present participle of these verbs ; as,

Maledicus, inclined to speak ill, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*.

Beneficus, inclined to do good, *beneficentior*, *beneficentissimus*.

Benevolus, wishing well, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*.

Some adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees are formed from prepositions ; as, from

Intra, within ; *intērior*, inner ; *intimus*, inmost.

Ultra, beyond ; *ultērior*, further ; *ultimus*, furthest, last.

Citra, on this side ; *citērior*, nearer ; *citimus*, nearest.

Prope, near ; *prōpior*, nearer ; *proximus*, nearest.

Præ, before ; *prior*, before ; *primus*, first.

And some have no positive at all to which we can refer them ; as,

dētērior, worse ; *dēterrimus*, worst.

ōcyor, swifter ; *ōcyssimus*, swiftest.

pōtior, more desirable ; *pōtissimus*, most desirable.

Adjectives ending in *er* form the superlative degree from the nominative case, by adding *rīmus* ; as, of *pulcher* fair, *pulcher-rīmus* fairest, or, most fair.

So too *vētus*, making in the gen. *vētēris*, though it has no comparative, makes in the superlative *vēterrīmus*.

The following adjectives in *lis* change *is* into *līmus* :

<i>Agīl-is</i> ,	nimble ;	<i>āgil-līmus</i> ,	nimblest,	or, most nimble.
<i>Fācīl-is</i> ,	easy ;	<i>fācil-līmus</i> ,	easiest,	or, most easy.
<i>Grācīl-is</i> ,	slender ;	<i>grācil-līmus</i> ,	slenderest,	or, most slender.
<i>Hūmīl-is</i> ,	low ;	<i>hūmil-līmus</i> ,	lowest,	or, most low.
<i>Simīl-is</i> ,	like ;	<i>simil-līmus</i> ,	likest,	or, most like.

Also, If a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case of an adjective, the comparison is usually made by *māgis* more, and *maxīmè* most ; as,

Pius, godly ; *māgis pius*, more godly ; *maxīmè pius*, most godly.*

OF A PRONOUN.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a substantive, and is either itself a substantive, and called a *personal pronoun* ; or an adjective, being either a *demonstrative*, or *relative*, or *interrogative* pronoun. There are also *possessive* pronouns, which are adjectives derived from the genitive cases of the personal pronouns.

The pronouns are :

<i>Egō</i> ,	I,	} The personal pronouns :	<i>meus</i> ,	mine,	} Possessive pronouns.
<i>tu</i> ,	you,		<i>tuus</i> ,	your,	
<i>sui</i> ,	of himself,		<i>suus</i> ,	his own,	
			<i>noster</i> ,	ours,	
			<i>vester</i> ,	yours, of <i>ye</i> ,	
			<i>qui</i> ,	who, the relative pronoun, and its compounds	
<i>hic</i> ,	this,	} Demon- strative pronouns :	<i>quicunque</i> ,	<i>quisquis</i> , etc.	
<i>is</i> ,	he,		<i>qui</i> or <i>quis</i> ,	who? the interrogative pronoun.	
<i>ille</i> ,	he,				
<i>ipse</i> ,	oneself,				
<i>idem</i> ,	(which is a compound of <i>is</i>) the same,				

The syllable *met*, giving additional emphasis to the pronoun, is often added to *egō*, in all cases except the genitive, and to some of the cases of *tu* and of *sui* ; but to the nominative of *tu*, *met* is not added, but *te*, as nom. *tūtē*, acc. *tūtēmet*. The accusative and ablative cases of *sui* admit of a reduplication, as *sēsē*.

* Juvenal uses *egregiūs* as the comparative of the adverb *egregiè*, and *piissimus* occurs in Seneca ; but these examples are not to be imitated.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Ego, tu, sui, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Ego,	<i>I,</i>	N. Nos,	<i>we,</i>
G. Mei,	<i>of me,</i>	G. Nostr-ûm,	<i>vel -i, of us,</i>
D. Mihi,*	<i>to me,</i>	D. Nôbis,	<i>to us,</i>
A. Me,	<i>me,</i>	A. Nos,	<i>us,</i>
V. —		V. —	
A. Me,	<i>from, or, by me.</i>	A. Nôbis,	<i>from, or, by us.</i>

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Tu,	<i>thou, or, you,</i>	N. Vos,	<i>ye, or, you, [you,</i>
G. Tui,	<i>of thee, or, you,</i>	G. Vestr-ûm,	<i>vel -i, of ye, or,</i>
D. Tibi,	<i>to thee, or, you,</i>	D. Vôbis,	<i>to ye, or, you,</i>
A. Te,	<i>thee, or, you,</i>	A. Vos,	<i>ye, or, you,</i>
V. Tu,	<i>o thou, or, you,</i>	V. Vos,	<i>o ye,</i>
A. Te,	<i>with thee, or, you.</i>	A. Vôbis,	<i>with ye, or, you.</i>

Sui,† of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined :

Singular and Plural.

G. Sui,	<i>of himself,</i>	} <i>herself, themselves, &c.</i>
D. Sibi,	<i>to himself,</i>	
A. Se,	<i>himself,</i>	
A. Se,	<i>by himself,</i>	

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Hic,†	hæc,	hoc,	N. Hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. Hujus,			G. Hôrum,	hârum,	hôrum,
D. Huic,			D. His,		
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. Hos,	has,	hæc,
V. —			V. —		
A. Hôc,	hâc,	hôc.	A. His.		

* In poetry often contracted into *mi*.

† *Sui* and its possessive *sui* are called *reflective* pronouns, because they refer to that person or thing which is the principal word in the sentence.

‡ To *hic* is often added *ce*, giving additional emphasis in all cases and genders; and in interrogative sentences, sometimes *cine* is added; as, *hujusce, huncine, hosce*, etc.

Ille he, fem. *illa* she, neut. *illud* that, is thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	N.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ille</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,	<i>ill-ud</i> ,	N. <i>Ill-i</i> ,	<i>ill-æ</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,
G. <i>Ill-ius</i> ,			G. <i>Ill-ōrum</i> ,	<i>ill-ārum</i> ,	<i>ill-ōrum</i> ,
D. <i>Ill-i</i> ,			D. <i>Ill-is</i> ,		
A. <i>Ill-um</i> ,	<i>ill-am</i> ,	<i>ill-ud</i> ,	A. <i>Ill-os</i> ,	<i>ill-as</i> ,	<i>ill-a</i> ,
V. —			V. —		
A. <i>Ill-o</i> ,	<i>ill-ā</i> ,	<i>ill-o</i> .	A. <i>Ill-is</i> .		

In like manner is also declined *iste* that, and *ipse* he himself ; except that this last makes *ipsum* in the nominative and accusative cases singular of the neuter gender.

Is, *ea*, *id*, he, she, or that, is thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Is</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	N. <i>Ii</i> ,	<i>eæ</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
G. <i>Ejus</i> ,			G. <i>Eōrum</i> ,	<i>eārum</i> ,	<i>eōrum</i> ,
D. <i>Ei</i> ,			D. <i>Iis</i> , <i>vel</i> ,	<i>eis</i> ,	
A. <i>Eum</i> ,	<i>eam</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	A. <i>Eos</i> ,	<i>eas</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
V. —			V. —		
A. <i>Eo</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	<i>eo</i> .	A. <i>Iis</i> , <i>vel</i> ,	<i>eis</i> .	

In like manner also is declined its compound, *idem* the same ; as, nom. *īdem*, *eādem*, *īdem* ; gen. *ejusdem*, &c.

The relative *qui*, who, is thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	N. <i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
G. <i>Cujus</i> ,			G. <i>Quorum</i> ,	<i>quarum</i> ,	<i>quorum</i> ,
D. <i>Cui</i> ,			D. <i>Quībus</i> ,*		
A. <i>Quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	A. <i>Quos</i> ,	<i>quas</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
V. —			V. —		
A. <i>Quo</i> ,	<i>quā</i> ,	<i>quo</i> .	A. <i>Quībus</i> .		

In like manner also are declined its compounds, *quidam*, a certain one ; *quivis*, *quilibet*, any one ; *quicunque*, whosoever, &c. &c.

* *Quībus* is often contracted into *queis*, or *quīs*, in poetry, and in some (but not in the purest) prose writers.

The *indefinite* pronoun *quis*, any one, (not found except after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*, *quanto*, or *quum*,) is declined like *qui*, except that in the nom. sing. fem. and also in the nom. and acc. pl. neut. it makes both *quæ* and (more usually) *quã*; and in the nom. and acc. neut. sing. it makes *quid*.

The *interrogative* pronoun, when joined with a substantive, is *qui*?* when standing without a substantive, the nom. sing. masc. is *quis*? and in the nom. and acc. sing. neut. *quid*?

Quisquis, whosoever, is confined to the following cases :

Nom.	Quisquis, ———	quidquid, or quicquid,
Acc.	———	quidquid, or quicquid,
Abl.	M. Quoquo, N. quoquo.	

OF A VERB.

A VERB is that part of speech by which it is declared that the subject of a sentence *does* or *suffers* something.

Verbs have two voices; the *active*, ending in *o*; the *passive*, ending in *or*.

Of verbs ending in *o* some are *transitive*, that is to say, in them the action passes on to a noun following; as, *amo te*, "I love you." And these verbs have a passive voice, which is made by changing *o* into *or*; as, *amor*, "I am loved."

Some are *intransitive*, that is to say, the action expressed by them does not pass on to any noun following, but is complete in itself; as, *curro*, "I run:" and these verbs have no passive voice.†

Three verbs, *fio*, "I become;" *vāpūlo*, "I am beaten;" *vēneo*, "I am sold," have a passive signification, but an active form (except that *fio* makes *factus sum* in the perfect;) and are called *neutral passives*.

* There are a few instances of *quis* also being used with a substantive, but, except in poetry, it is seldom done, except to avoid an open vowel.

† But, from these verbs, impersonal verbs are often formed of the third singular passive; as, *vivitur*, "it is lived by men," that is to say, "men live, one lives," &c.; *itur*, "men go, one goes," &c.; *ventum est*, "I, or you, or he came," &c.

Four verbs, *audeo*, "I dare;" *fido*, "I trust;" *gaudeo*, "I am glad;" and *sōleo*, "I am accustomed," have the passive form with an active signification in the participle of the perfect tense, and in the tenses formed from it; as, *ausus sum*, &c. and these are called *neuter passives*.

Of verbs ending in *or* some are *passive*, as has been said above, and some are *deponent* verbs, being of a passive form (with the addition of gerunds and supines,) but of an active signification; some being *transitive*; as, *vēnēror Deum*, "I worship God;" and some *intransitive*; as, *mōrior*, "I die."

Some verbs are used only in the third person singular, having no nominative case; as, *tōnat*, "it thunders;" *ōportet me*, "it behoves me;" and these are called verbs *impersonal*.

OF MOODS.

There are four moods, the indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and the infinitive.

The *indicative* mood either declares a thing positively; as, *ego amo*, "I do love;" or asks a question; as, *amas tu*, "dost thou love?"

The *imperative* mood expresses a command, a request, a wish, or an exhortation; as, *vēni huc*, "come hither;" *parce mihi*, "spare me." It is also known by the sign *let*; as, *īto*, "let him go."*

The *subjunctive* or *potential* mood speaks of the subject as it is conceived in the mind; and is called *subjunctive*, when it is subjoined to another word or clause going before it; as, *nescio qualis sit*, "I know not what sort of man he is." It is called *potential*, when it signifies *power*, *duty*, *likelihood*, *inclination*, or *wish*; and in the second and third persons of the present and perfect it is sometimes used nearly in the sense of the impera-

* In grammars the imperative is usually given as consisting but of one tense; but the forms in *to* (active) and in *tor* (passive) have a more future sense than the other forms.

tive; as, *sis bōnus*, “may you be propitious;” *āmet*, “let him love.”

The *infinitive* mood has neither number, person, or nominative case before it; and is known commonly by the sign *to*; as, *amāre*, “to love.” It is also often used as a nominative or accusative case neuter; as, *errāre humanum est*, “to err is human.”

OF TENSES.

Verbs have six tenses or times, expressing the time of an action; the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the first future, and second future, or future perfect.

The *present* tense speaks of a thing now existing, or now doing; as, *āmo*, “I love;” *lōquor*, “I am speaking;” *sum*, “I am.”

The *imperfect* tense speaks of a thing that was being done, but was not terminated, at some particular past time; as, *āmābam*, “I was loving.” And sometimes it expresses a habit; as, *dīcēbam*, “I used to say.” And is formed by changing—

In the first conjugation	<i>o</i> into <i>-ābam</i> ,
In the second	<i>o</i> into <i>-bam</i> ,
In the third and fourth	<i>o</i> into <i>-ēbam</i> .*

The *perfect* tense speaks of an action terminated; as, *āmāvi*, “I loved,” or “have loved,” and is formed as will be shewn in the *As in præsenti*.

The *pluperfect* speaks of a thing done at some time past, and then ended; as, *āmāvēram*, “I had loved;” and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ēram*.

The *first future* tense speaks of a thing to be done hereafter; as, *āmābo*, “I shall love;” and is formed from the present by changing—

In the first conjugation	<i>o</i> into <i>ābo</i> ,
In the second	<i>o</i> into <i>bo</i> ,
In the third and fourth	<i>o</i> into <i>am</i> .

* The Poets often make the imperfect of the fourth conjugation in *bam*, instead of *-iebam*; as, “*Lenibat dictis animum*.” Virg.

The *second future*, or *future perfect*, speaks of a thing which will have been done when something else has been done ; as, *āmāvēro*, “I shall have loved ;” and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ěro*.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have three *gerunds*, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which supply the oblique cases of the infinitive present active as, *āmādi*, “of loving ;” *āmāndum*, “loving ;” *āmāndo*, “by loving,” &c. ; and they are formed from the present by changing—

In the first conjugation *o* into *andi*,
 In the second *eo* into *endi*,
 In the third and fourth *o* into *endi*.

They have two *supines*, which are also used to supply cases for the infinitive and are formed, as will be taught in the *As in præsenti*.

The supine in *um* is used only with verbs expressing or implying a motion to a place ; as, *eo dormitum*, “I go to sleep.”

The supine in *u* has a passive sense, and is used only after adjectives, or after one or two substantives used as adjectives ; as, *turpe factu*, “base to be done ;” *nēfas dictu*, “wicked to be said.” But there are many verbs which have no supine.

PARTICIPLES.

THERE are four participles ; two active, and two passive :—

The participle of the present active, which signifies a present action, and ends in *ans* in the first conjugation, and in *ens* in the others ; as, *āmāns*, “loving ;” *mōnens*, “warning.”

The participle future active ending in *ūrus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing anything ; as, *āmātūrus*, “about to love,” or “likely to love.”

The participle perfect passive, which signifies what is actually done and completed ; as, *āmātus*, “loved ;” *mōnītus*, “having been warned.” But in deponent verbs this participle has commonly an active signification ; as, *lōcūtus hēc*, “having spoken these things.”

Another participle passive, called also the *gerundive*, which denotes that what is spoken of must happen, ought to happen, or (sometimes) is actually happening, with respect to a person or thing ; as, *āmāndus*, “who must, or ought to be loved ;” *in ēpistolā scribendā*, “in writing the letter.”

OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two numbers, singular and plural, like nouns ; and three persons in each number.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Ego amo,	<i>I love.</i>	Nos amāmus,	<i>We love.</i>
2. Tu amas,	<i>you love.</i>	Vos amātis,	<i>ye love.</i>
3. Ille amat,	<i>he loves.</i>	Illi amant,	<i>they love.</i>

All nouns, except *ego* and *tu*, are of the third person.

OF THE VERB *Esse*, to be.

Before other verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the verb esse, to be.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futūrus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Sum,	<i>I am.</i>	Plur. Sūmus,	<i>We are.</i>
Ēs,	<i>you are.</i>	Estis,	<i>ye are.</i>
Est,	<i>he is.</i>	Sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Ēram,	<i>I was.</i>	Plur. Ērāmus,	<i>We were.</i>
Ēras,	<i>you were.</i>	Ērātis,	<i>ye were.</i>
Ērat,	<i>he was.</i>	Ērant,	<i>they were.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
Fuisti,	<i>you have been.</i>
Fuit,	<i>he has been.</i>
Plur. Fuimus,	<i>We have been.</i>
Fuistis,	<i>ye have been.</i>
Fuerunt, <i>vel</i> fuere,	<i>they have been.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Fuëram,	<i>I had been.</i>
Fuëras,	<i>you had been.</i>
Fuërat,	<i>he had been.</i>
Plur. Fuëramus,	<i>We had been.</i>
Fuërātis,	<i>ye had been.</i>
Fuërant,	<i>they had been.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing. Ēro,	<i>I shall be.</i>
Ēris,	<i>you will be.</i>
Ērit,	<i>he will be.</i>
Plur. Ērimus,	<i>We shall be.</i>
Ēritis,	<i>ye will be.</i>
Ērunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have*

Sing. Fuëro,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
Fuëris,	<i>you will have been.</i>
Fuërit,	<i>he will have been.</i>
Plur. Fuërimus,	<i>We shall have been.</i>
Fuëritis,	<i>ye will have been.</i>
Fuërint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Es, esto,	<i>Be thou.</i>
Esto,	<i>be he, or, let him be.</i>
Plur. Este, estōte,	<i>Be ye.</i>
Sunto,	<i>be they, or, let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

Sing. Sim,	<i>I may be.</i>	Plur. Sīmus,	<i>We may be.</i>
Sis,	<i>you may be.</i>	Sītis,	<i>ye may be.</i>
Sit,	<i>he may be.</i>	Sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, &c.*

Sing. Essem, <i>vel, fōrem,</i>	<i>I might be.</i>
Essea, <i>vel, fōres,</i>	<i>you might be.</i>
Esset, <i>vel, fōret,</i>	<i>he might be.</i>
Plur. Essēmus, <i>vel, fōrēmus,</i>	<i>We might be.</i>
Essētis, <i>vel, fōrētis,</i>	<i>ye might be.</i>
Essent, <i>vel, fōrent,</i>	<i>they might be.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have, &c.*

Sing. Fuërim,	<i>I may have been.</i>
Fuëris,	<i>you may have been.</i>
Fuërit,	<i>he may have been.</i>
Plur. Fuërimus,	<i>We may have been.</i>
Fuëritis,	<i>ye may have been.</i>
Fuërint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, would have, &c.*

Sing. Fuissem,	<i>I might, or, would have been.</i>
Fuisses,	<i>you might, or, would have been.</i>
Fuisset,	<i>he might, or, would have been.</i>
Plur. Faissēmus,	<i>We might, or, would have been.</i>
Fuissētis,	<i>ye might, or, would have been.</i>
Fuissent,	<i>they might, or, would have been.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about, &c.*

Sing. Fütūrus sim,*	<i>I may be about to be.</i>
Fütūrus sis,	<i>you may be about to be.</i>
Fütūrus sit,	<i>he may be about to be.</i>
Plur. Fütūri sīmus,	<i>We may be about to be.</i>
Fütūri sītis,	<i>ye may be about to be.</i>
Fütūri sint,	<i>they may be about to be.</i>

* *Fütūrus*, being in reality a participle, agrees with its substantive

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense,

Esse, *to be.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense,

Fuisse, *to have been.*

Future Tense,

Före, *vel*, Fütürum esse, *to be about to be.*

Participle future,*

Fütürus, *about to be.*

DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

VERBS have four conjugations, both in the active and passive voice.

The first conjugation has *ā* in the penultima (or last syllable but one) of the infinitive mood active; as, *āmo*, *āmāre*.†

The second has *ē*; as, *mōnĕo*, *mōnĕre*.

The third has *ĕ*; as, *rĕgo*, *rĕgĕre*.

The fourth has *ī*; as, *audĭo*, *audĭre*.

VERBS ACTIVE in *O* are declined after these examples.

1. Am-o, am-as, am-āvi, am-āre; aman-di, aman-do, aman-dum; amāt-um, amāt-u; am-ans, amātu-rus:
to love.

in gender and number; so that in the singular it may be either *futurus*, *futura*, or *futurum*; in the plural, *futuri*, -*æ*, or -*a*.

* Some compounds of *sum* have also a present participle; as, *absūm* to be absent, part. *absens*, absent, or being absent.

† Except *dō*, "to give;" which makes *dāre*, *dātum*.

2. Mōn-eo, mon-es, mon-ui, mon-ēre ; monen-di, monen-do, monen-dum ; monīt-um, monīt-u ; mon-ens, monītū-rus : *to advise.*

3. Rēg-o,* reg-is, rex-i, reg-ēre ; regen-di, regen-do, regen-dum ; rect-um, rect-u ; reg-ens, rectu-rus : *to rule.*

4. Aud-io, aud-is, aud-īvi, aud-īre ; audien-di, audien-do, audien-dum ; audīt-um, audīt-u ; audi-ens, auditu-rus : *to hear.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Ām-o,	<i>I love, am loving, or, do love.</i>
ām-as,	<i>you love, are loving, or, do love.</i>
ām-at,	<i>he loves, is loving, or, does love.</i>
Plur. Ām-āmus,	<i>We love, are loving, or, do love.</i>
ām-ātis,	<i>ye love, are loving, or, do love.</i>
ām-ant,	<i>they love, are loving, or, do love.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Ām-ābam,	<i>I did love, or, was loving.</i>
am-ābas,	<i>you did love, or, were loving.</i>
am-ābat,	<i>he did love, or, was loving.</i>
Plur. Ām-ābāmus,	<i>We did love, or, were loving.</i>
am-ābātis,	<i>ye did love, or, were loving.</i>
am-ābant,	<i>they did love, or, were loving.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Āmāv-i,	<i>I loved, or, have loved.</i>
amāv-isti,	<i>you loved, or, have loved.</i>
amāv-it,	<i>he loved, or, has loved.</i>
Plur. Amāv-īmus,	<i>We loved, or, have loved.</i>
amāv-istis,	<i>ye loved, or, have loved.</i>
amāv-ērunt, <i>vel-ēre,</i>	<i>they loved, or, have loved.</i>

* The following is the way in which a Verb of the third Conjugation ending in *-io* is declined :—Fūg-io, fug-is, fūg-i, fug-ērē ; fugien-di, fugien-do, fugien-dum ; fugīt-um, fugīt-u ; fugi-ens, fugitu-rus.

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had*.

Sing. Āmāv-ēram,	<i>I had loved.</i>
amāv-ēras,	<i>you had loved.</i>
amāv-ērat,	<i>he had loved.</i>
Plur. Amāv-ērāmus,	<i>We had loved.</i>
amāv-ērātis,	<i>ye had loved.</i>
amāv-érant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will*.

Sing. Ām-ābo,	<i>I shall love.</i>
am-ābis,	<i>you will love.</i>
am-ābit,	<i>he will love.</i>
Plur. Am-ābīmus,	<i>We shall love.</i>
am-ābītis,	<i>ye will love.</i>
am-ābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have*.

Sing. Āmāv-ēro,	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
amāv-ēris,	<i>you will have loved.</i>
amāv-ērit,	<i>he will have loved.</i>
Plur. Amāv-ērīmus,	<i>We shall have loved.</i>
amāv-ērītis,	<i>ye will have loved.</i>
amāv-ērint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Ām-a, ām-āto,	<i>Love thou.</i>
ām-āto,	<i>let him love.</i>
Plur. Am-āte, am-ātōte,	<i>Love ye.</i>
am-anto,	<i>let them love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

Sing. Ām-em,	<i>I may love.</i>
am-es,	<i>you may love.</i>
am-et,	<i>he may love.</i>
Plur. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love.</i>
am-ētis,	<i>ye may love.</i>
am-ent,	<i>they may love.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should, would.*

Sing. Ām-ārem,	<i>I might love.</i>
am-āres,	<i>you might love.</i>
am-āret,	<i>he might love.</i>
Plur. Ām-ārēmus,	<i>We might love.</i>
am-ārētis,	<i>ye might love.</i>
am-ārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

Sing. Āmāv-ērim,	<i>I may have loved.</i>
amāv-ēris,	<i>you may have loved.</i>
amāv-ērit,	<i>he may have loved.</i>
Plur. Āmāv-ērīmus,	<i>We may have loved.</i>
amāv-ērītis,	<i>ye may have loved.</i>
amāv-ērīnt,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

Sing. Āmāv-issem,	<i>I would have loved.</i>
amāv-isses,	<i>you would have loved.</i>
amāv-isset,	<i>he would have loved.</i>
Plur. Āmāv-issēmus,	<i>We would have loved.</i>
amāv-issētis,	<i>ye would have loved.</i>
amāv-issent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing. Āmātū-rus sim,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
amatu-rus sis,	<i>you may be about to love.</i>
amatu-rus sit,	<i>he may be about to love.</i>
Plur. Amatu-ri simus,	<i>We may be about to love.</i>
amatu-ri sitis,	<i>ye may be about to love.</i>
amatu-ri sint,	<i>they may be about to love.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Āmā-re, *to love.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Āmāv-isse, *to have loved.*

Future Tense.

Āmātū-rum esse, *or, fōre,* *to be about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Āman-di,	<i>of loving.</i>
Aman-do,	<i>in loving.</i>
Aman-dum,	<i>to love.</i>

SUPINES.

Active,	Passive,
Āmāt-um, <i>to love.</i>	Āmāt-u, <i>to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense,	Future,
Ām-ans, <i>loving.</i>	Āmātū-ras, <i>about to love.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.—*Moneo.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Mōn-eo,	<i>I advise, am advising, or, do advise.</i>
mōn-es,	<i>you advise, are advising or, do advise.</i>
mōn-et,	<i>he advises, is advising, or, does advise.</i>
Plur. Mōn-ēmus,	<i>We advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>
mōn-ētis,	<i>ye advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>
mōn-ent,	<i>they advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I did advise, or, was advising.</i>
mōn-ēbas,	<i>you did advise, or, were advising.</i>
mōn-ēbat,	<i>he did advise, or, was advising.</i>
Plur. Mōn-ēbāmus,	<i>We did advise, or, were advising.</i>
mōn-ēbātis,	<i>ye did advise, or, were advising.</i>
mōn-ēbant,	<i>they did advise, or, were advising.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have*.

Sing. Mõnu-i,	<i>I advised, or, have advised.</i>
mõnu-isti,	<i>you advised, or, have advised.</i>
mõnu-it,	<i>he advised, or, has advised.</i>
Plur. Mõnu-ĩmus,	<i>We advised, or, have advised.</i>
mõnu-istis,	<i>ye advised, or, have advised.</i>
mõnu-ěrunt, v. -ěre,	<i>they advised, or, have advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had*.

Sing. Mõnu-ěram,	<i>I had advised.</i>
mõnu-ěras,	<i>you had advised.</i>
mõnu-ěrat,	<i>he had advised.</i>
Plur. Mõnu-ěrāmus,	<i>We had advised.</i>
mõnu-ěrātis,	<i>ye had advised.</i>
mõnu-ěrant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will*.

Sing. Mõnē-bo,	<i>I shall advise.</i>
mõnē-bis,	<i>you will advise.</i>
mõnē-bit,	<i>he will advise.</i>
Plur. Mõnē-bĩmus,	<i>We shall, or, will advise.</i>
mõnē-bītis,	<i>ye will advise.</i>
mõnē-bunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have, will have*.

Sing. Monu-ěro,	<i>I shall have advised.</i>
monu-ěris,	<i>you will have advised.</i>
monu-ěrit,	<i>he will have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-ěrimus,	<i>We shall have advised.</i>
monu-ěrītis,	<i>ye will have advised.</i>
monu-ěrint,	<i>they will have advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Mõn-e, mon-ěto,	<i>Advise thou.</i>
mon-ěto,	<i>let him advise.</i>
Plur. Mon-ěte, mon-ětōte,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
mon-ento,	<i>let them advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

Sing. Mone-am,	<i>I may advise.</i>
mone-as,	<i>you may advise.</i>
mone-at,	<i>he may advise.</i>
Plur. Mone-āmus,	<i>We may advise.</i>
mone-ātis,	<i>ye may advise.</i>
mone-ant,	<i>they may advise.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, would*.

Sing. Monē-rem,	<i>I might advise.</i>
monē-res,	<i>you might advise.</i>
monē-ret,	<i>he might advise.</i>
Plur. Monē-rēmus,	<i>We might advise.</i>
monē-rētis,	<i>ye might advise.</i>
monē-rent,	<i>they might advise.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have*.

Sing. Monu-ërim,	<i>I may have advised.</i>
monu-ëris,	<i>you may have advised.</i>
monu-ërit,	<i>he may have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-ëřimus,	<i>We may have advised.</i>
monu-ëřitis,	<i>ye may have advised.</i>
monu-ërint,	<i>they may have advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have*.

Sing. Monu-issem,	<i>I would have advised.</i>
monu-isses,	<i>you would have advised.</i>
monu-isset,	<i>he would have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-issēmus,	<i>We would have advised.</i>
monu-issētis,	<i>ye would have advised.</i>
monu-issent,	<i>they would have advised.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to*.

Sing. Mōnītū-rus sim,	<i>I may be about to advise.</i>
monitu-rus sis,	<i>you may be about to advise.</i>
monitu-rus sit,	<i>he may be about to advise.</i>
Plur. Mōnītū-ri sīmus,	<i>We may be about to advise.</i>
monitu-ri sītis,	<i>ye may be about to advise.</i>
monitu-ri sint,	<i>they may be about to advise.</i>

D

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mon-ēre, *to advise.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Monu-isse, *to have advised.*

Future Tense.

Monītū-rum esse, or fōre, *to be about to advise.*

GERUNDS.

Monen-di,	<i>of advising.</i>
monen-do,	<i>in advising.</i>
monen-dum,	<i>to advise.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.

Monīt-um, *to advise.*

Passive.

Monīt-u, *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.

Mon-ens, *advising.*

Future.

Monītū-rus, *about to advise.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rēgo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Rēg-o,	<i>I rule, am ruling, or, do rule.</i>
rēg-is,	<i>you rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>
rēg-it,	<i>he rules, is ruling, or, does rule.</i>
Plur. Rēg-īmus,	<i>We rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>
rēg-ītis,	<i>ye rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>
rēg-unt,	<i>they rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Rēgē-bam,	<i>I did rule, or, was ruling.</i>
rēgē-bas,	<i>you did rule, or, were ruling.</i>
rēgē-bat,	<i>he did rule, or, was ruling.</i>
Plur. Rēgē-bāmus,	<i>We did rule, or, were ruling.</i>
rēgē-bātis,	<i>ye did rule, or, were ruling,</i>
rēgē-bant,	<i>they did rule, or, were ruling.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Rex-i,	<i>I ruled, or, have ruled.</i>
rex-isti,	<i>you ruled, or, have ruled.</i>
rex-it,	<i>he ruled, or, has ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-īmus,	<i>We ruled, or, have ruled.</i>
rex-istis,	<i>ye ruled, or, have ruled.</i>
rex-ērunt, v. ēre,	<i>they ruled, or, have ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled.</i>
rex-eras,	<i>you had ruled.</i>
rex-erat,	<i>he had ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-ērāmus,	<i>We had ruled.</i>
rex-ērātis,	<i>ye had ruled.</i>
rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing. Rēg-am,	<i>I shall rule.</i>
rēg-es,	<i>you will rule.</i>
rēg-et,	<i>he will rule.</i>
Plur. Rēg-ēmus,	<i>We shall rule.</i>
rēg-ētis,	<i>ye shall rule.</i>
rēg-ent,	<i>they will rule.</i>

6. Second Future, or, Future Perfect Tense —*shall have, will have.*

Sing. Rex-ēro,	<i>I shall have ruled.</i>
rex-ēris,	<i>you will have ruled.</i>
rex-ērit,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-ērīmus,	<i>We shall have ruled.</i>
rex-ērītis,	<i>ye will have ruled.</i>
rex-erint,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Rĕg-e, reg-ĭto,	<i>Rule thou.</i>
rĕg-ĭto,	<i>let him rule.</i>
Plur. Rĕg-ĭte, reg-ĭtote,	<i>Rule ye.</i>
rĕg-unto,	<i>let them rule.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may.*

Sing. Rĕg-am,	<i>I may rule.</i>
rĕg-as,	<i>you may rule.</i>
rĕg-at,	<i>he may rule.</i>
Plur. Rĕg-āmus,	<i>We may rule.</i>
rĕg-ātis,	<i>ye may rule.</i>
rĕg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might.*

Sing. Rĕg-ĕrem,	<i>I might rule.</i>
rĕg-ĕres,	<i>you might rule.</i>
rĕg-ĕret,	<i>he might rule.</i>
Plur. Rĕg-ĕrĕmus,	<i>We might rule.</i>
rĕg-ĕrĕtis,	<i>ye might rule.</i>
rĕg-ĕrent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

Sing. Rex-ĕrim,	<i>I may have ruled.</i>
rex-ĕris,	<i>you may have ruled.</i>
rex-ĕrit,	<i>he may have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-ĕrĭmus,	<i>We may have ruled.</i>
rex-ĕrĭtis,	<i>ye may have ruled.</i>
rex-ĕrint,	<i>they may have ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

Sing. Rex-issem,	<i>I would have ruled.</i>
rex-isses,	<i>you would have ruled.</i>
rex-isset,	<i>he would have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-issĕmus,	<i>We would have ruled.</i>
rex-issĕtis,	<i>ye would have ruled.</i>
rex-issent,	<i>they would have ruled.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing. Rectū-rus sim,	<i>I may be about to rule.</i>
rectū-rus sis,	<i>you may be about to rule.</i>
rectū-rus sit,	<i>he may be about to rule.</i>
Plur. Rectū-ri simus,	<i>We may be about to rule.</i>
rectū-ri sitis,	<i>ye may be about to rule.</i>
rectū-ri sint,	<i>they may be about to rule.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Reg-ĕre, *to rule.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Rex-isse, *to have ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rectū-rum esse, or fōre, *to be about to rule.*

GERUNDS.

Regen-di,	<i>of ruling.</i>
regen-do,	<i>in ruling.</i>
regen-dum,	<i>to rule.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.

Rect-um, *to rule.*

Passive.

Rect-u, *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.

Reg-ens, *ruling.*

Future.

Rectū-rus, *about to rule.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audio.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Aud-io,	<i>I hear, am hearing, or, do hear.</i>
aud-is,	<i>you hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>
aud-it,	<i>he hears, is hearing, or, does hear.</i>
Plur. Aud-īmus,	<i>We hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>
aud-ītis,	<i>ye hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>
aud-iunt,	<i>they hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Audiē-bam,	<i>I did hear, or, was hearing.</i>
audiē-bas,	<i>you did hear, or, were hearing.</i>
audiē-bat,	<i>he did hear, or, was hearing.</i>
Plur. Audiē-bāmus,	<i>We did hear, or, were hearing.</i>
audiē-bātis,	<i>ye did hear, or, were hearing.</i>
audiē-bant,	<i>they did hear, or, were hearing.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Audīv-i,	<i>I heard, or, have heard.</i>
audīv-isti,	<i>you heard, or, have heard.</i>
audīv-it,	<i>he heard, or, has heard.</i>
Plur. Audīv-īmus,	<i>We heard, or, have heard.</i>
audīv-istis,	<i>ye heard, or, have heard.</i>
audīv-ērunt, v. -ēre,	<i>they heard, or, have heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Audīv-ēram,	<i>I had heard.</i>
audīv-ēras,	<i>you had heard.</i>
audīv-ērat,	<i>he had heard.</i>
Plur. Audīv-ērāmus,	<i>We had heard.</i>
audīv-ērātis,	<i>ye had heard.</i>
audīv-ērant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing. Audi-am,	<i>I shall hear.</i>
audi-es,	<i>you will hear.</i>
audi-et,	<i>he will hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-ēmus,	<i>We shall hear.</i>
audi-ētis,	<i>ye will hear.</i>
audi-ent,	<i>they will hear.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have.*

Sing. Audīv-ēro,	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
Audīv-ēris,	<i>you will have heard.</i>
Audīv-ērit,	<i>he will have heard.</i>
Plur. Audīv-ērīmus,	<i>We shall have heard.</i>
Audīv-ērītis,	<i>ye will have heard.</i>
Audīv-ērint,	<i>they will have heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Aud-i, aud-īto,	<i>Hear thou,</i>
aud-īto,	<i>let him hear.</i>
Plur. Aud-īte, aud-ītōte,	<i>Hear ye.</i>
aud-iunto,	<i>let them hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

Sing. Audi-am,	<i>I may hear.</i>
audi-as,	<i>you may hear.</i>
audi-at,	<i>he may hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-āmus,	<i>We may hear.</i>
audi-ātis,	<i>ye may hear.</i>
audi-ant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might*.

Sing. Audi-rem,	<i>I might hear.</i>
audi-res,	<i>you might hear.</i>
audi-ret,	<i>he might hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-rēmus,	<i>We might hear.</i>
audi-rētis,	<i>ye might hear.</i>
audi-rent,	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have*.

Sing. Audi-v-ērim,	<i>I may have heard.</i>
audi-v-ēris,	<i>you may have heard.</i>
audi-v-ērit,	<i>he may have heard.</i>
Plur. Audi-v-ērīmus,	<i>We may have heard.</i>
audi-v-ērītis,	<i>ye may have heard.</i>
audi-v-ērīnt,	<i>they may have heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have*.

Sing. Audi-v-issem,	<i>I would have heard.</i>
audi-v-isses,	<i>you would have heard.</i>
audi-v-isset,	<i>he would have heard.</i>
Plur. Audi-v-issēmus,	<i>We would have heard.</i>
audi-v-issētis,	<i>ye would have heard.</i>
audi-v-issent,	<i>they would have heard.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

Sing. Auditū-rus sim,	<i>I may be about to hear.</i>
auditū-rus sis,	<i>you may be about to hear.</i>
auditū-rus sit,	<i>he may be about to hear.</i>
Plur. Auditū-ri sīmus,	<i>We may be about to hear.</i>
auditū-ri sītis,	<i>ye may be about to hear.</i>
auditū-ri sint,	<i>they may be about to hear.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Aud-īre, *to hear.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Audīv-isse, *to have heard.*

Future Tense.

Auditū-rum esse, *or fōre, to be about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Audien-di,	<i>of hearing.</i>
audien-do,	<i>in hearing.</i>
audien-dum,	<i>to hear.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.

Audit-um, *to hear.*

Passive.

Audit-u, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.

Audi-ens, *hearing.*

Future.

Auditū-rus, *about to hear.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS are conjugated thus :

Present.

Sing. Dēcet me,	<i>It becomes me, or, I ought.</i>
dēcet te,	<i>it becomes you, or, you ought.</i>
dēcet illum,	<i>it becomes him, or, he ought.</i>
Plur. Dēcet nos,	<i>It becomes us, or, we ought.</i>
dēcet vos,	<i>it becomes you, or, ye ought.</i>
dēcet illos,	<i>it becomes them, or, they ought.</i>

Imperfect.

Dēcēbat me,
dēcēbat te, &c.

Like the third sing. of *moneo* ; and so on, through all the tenses.

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR* are thus declined :

1. Ām-or, ām-āris *vel* am-āre, amāt-us sum *vel** fui ;
am-āri ; amāt-us, aman-dus ; *to be loved.*
2. Mōn-ēor, mon-ēris *vel* mon-ēre, mōnīt-us sum *vel*
fui ; mon-ēri ; monit-us, monén-dus ; *to be advised.*
3. Rēg-or, rēg-ēris *vel* reg-ēre, rect-us sum *vel* fui ;
reg-i ; rectus, regén-dus ; *to be ruled.*
4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-īre, audīt-us sum *vel* fui ;
aud-īri ; audīt-us, audién-dus ; *to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—am.

Sing. Āmor,	<i>I am loved.</i>
amāris, v. am-āre,	<i>you are loved.</i>
am-ātur,	<i>he is loved.</i>
Plur. Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved.</i>
am-āmīni,	<i>ye are loved.</i>
am-antur,	<i>they are loved.</i>

*uv** There are, however, very few instances (if any) of such forms as *matus fui* being used, by good authors, as the perfect tense, and equivalent to *oatus sum*.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved.</i>
am-ābāris, v. -ābāre,	<i>you were loved.</i>
am-ābātur,	<i>he was loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ābāmur,	<i>We were loved.</i>
am-ābāmini,	<i>ye were loved.</i>
am-ābantur,	<i>they were loved.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us sum, <i>vel</i> fui,	<i>I have been loved.</i>
amāt-us es, v. fuisti,	<i>you have been loved.</i>
amāt-us est, v. fuit,	<i>he has been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i sūmus, v. fuīmus,	<i>We have been loved.</i>
amāt-i estis, v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been loved.</i>
amāt-i sunt, fuērunt, v. -ēre,	<i>they have been loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Amāt-us ēram, v. fuēram,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
amāt-us ēras, v. fuēras,	<i>you had been loved.</i>
amāt-us ērat, v. fuērat,	<i>he had been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i ērāmus, v. fuērāmus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
amāt-i ērātis, v. fuērātis,	<i>ye had been loved.</i>
amāt-i ērant, v. fuērant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved.</i>
am-ābēris, v. -ābēre,	<i>you will be loved.</i>
am-ābitur,	<i>he will be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ābīmur,	<i>We shall be loved.</i>
am-ābīmini,	<i>ye will be loved.</i>
am-ābuntur,	<i>they will be loved.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us ēro, v. fuēro,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
amāt-us ēris, v. fuēris,	<i>you will have been loved.</i>
amāt-us ērit, v. fuērit,	<i>he will have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i ērīmus, v. fuērīmus,	<i>We shall have been loved.</i>
amāt-i ēritis, v. fuēritis,	<i>ye will have been loved.</i>
amāt-i ērunt, v. fuērunt,	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Am-āre, am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
am-ātor,	<i>let him be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-āmīui, am-āmīnor,	<i>Be ye loved.</i>
ām-antor,	<i>let them be loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Amer,	<i>I may be loved.</i>
am-ēris, v. am-ēre,	<i>you may be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved.</i>
am-ēmīni,	<i>ye may be loved.</i>
am-entur,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved.</i>
am-ārēris, v. ārēre,	<i>you might be loved.</i>
am-ārētur,	<i>he might be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-ārēmur,	<i>We might be loved.</i>
am-ārēmini,	<i>ye might be loved.</i>
am-ētur,	<i>he may be loved.</i>
am-ārentur,	<i>they might be loved.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us sim, v. fuerim,	<i>I may have been loved.</i>
amāt-us sis, v. fueris,	<i>you may have been loved.</i>
amāt-us sit, v. fuerit,	<i>he may have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i simus, v. fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved.</i>
amāt-i sitis, v. fueritis,	<i>ye may have been loved.</i>
amāt-i sint, v. fuerint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us essem, v. fuisset,	<i>I would have been loved.</i>
amāt-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been loved.</i>
amāt-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amāt-i essemus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been loved.</i>
amāt-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been loved.</i>
amāt-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Am-āri, *to be loved.*

Perfect. and Pluperfect Tense.

Amāt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been loved.*

Future Tense.

Amāt-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Amāt-us, *loved, or, being loved.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Aman-dus, *to be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Mōn-eor,	<i>I am advised.</i>
mon-ēris, <i>v.</i> -ēre,	<i>you are advised.</i>
mon-ētur,	<i>he is advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēmur,	<i>We are advised.</i>
mon-ēmīni,	<i>ye are advised.</i>
mon-entur,	<i>they are advised.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. Mon-ēbar,	<i>I was advised.</i>
mon-ēbāris, <i>v.</i> -ēbāre,	<i>you were advised.</i>
mon-ēbātur,	<i>he was advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēbāmur,	<i>We were advised.</i>
mon-ēbāmīni,	<i>ye were advised.</i>
mon-ēbantur,	<i>they were advised.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us sum, v. fui,	<i>I have been advised.</i>
monīt-us es, v. fuisti,	<i>you have been advised.</i>
monīt-us est, v. fuit,	<i>he has been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i sumus, v. fuīmus,	<i>We have been advised.</i>
monīt-i estis, v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been advised.</i>
monīt-isunt, fuērunt, v. fuēre,	<i>they have been advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Monīt-us ēram, v. fuēram,	<i>I had been advised.</i>
monīt-us ēras, v. fuēras,	<i>you had been advised.</i>
monīt-us ērat, v. fuērat,	<i>he had been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i ēramus, v. fuērāmus,	<i>We had been advised.</i>
monīt-i ērātis, v. fuērātis,	<i>ye had been advised.</i>
monīt-i ērant, v. fuērant,	<i>they had been advised.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Mon-ēbor,	<i>I shall be advised.</i>
mon-ebēris, v. ebēre,	<i>you will be advised.</i>
mon-ēbitur,	<i>he will be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēbīmur,	<i>We shall be advised.</i>
mon-ēbīmini,	<i>ye will be advised.</i>
mon-ēbuntur,	<i>they will be advised.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us ēro, v. fuēro,	<i>I shall have been advised.</i>
monīt-us ēris, v. fuēris,	<i>you will have been advised.</i>
monīt-us ērit, v. fuērit,	<i>he will have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i ērimus, v. fuērīmus,	<i>We shall have been advised.</i>
monīt-i ēritis, v. fuērītis,	<i>ye will have been advised.</i>
monīt-i ērunt, v. fuērīnt,	<i>they will have been advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Mon-ēre, mon-ētor,	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
mon-ētor,	<i>let him be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ēmīni, mon-ēmīnor,	<i>Be ye advised.</i>
mon-entor,	<i>let them be advised.</i>

E

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Mon-ear,	<i>I may be advised.</i>
mon-eāris, v. mon-eāre,	<i>you may be advised.</i>
mon-eātur,	<i>he may be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-eāmur,	<i>We may be advised.</i>
mon-eāmīni,	<i>ye may be advised.</i>
mon-eantur,	<i>they may be advised.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Mon-ērer,	<i>I might be advised.</i>
mon-ērēris, v. -ērēre,	<i>you might be advised.</i>
mon-ērētur,	<i>he might be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ērēmur,	<i>We might be advised.</i>
mon-ērēmīni,	<i>ye might be advised.</i>
mon-ērentur,	<i>they might be advised.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us sim, v. fuērim,	<i>I may have been advised.</i>
monīt-us sis, v. fuēris,	<i>you may have been advised.</i>
monīt-us sit, v. fuērit,	<i>he may have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i sīmus, v. fuērīmus,	<i>We may have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sītis, v. fuērītis,	<i>ye may have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sint, v. fuērīnt,	<i>they may have been advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us essem, v. fuīssēm,	<i>I would have been advised.</i>
monīt-us esses, v. fuīssēs,	<i>you would have been advised.</i>
monīt-us esset, v. fuīssēt,	<i>he would have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i essēmus, v. fuīssēmus,	<i>We would have been advised.</i>
monīt-i essētis, v. fuīssētis,	<i>ye would have been advised.</i>
monīt-i essent, v. fuīssent,	<i>they would have been advised.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mon-ēri,	<i>to be advised.</i>
----------	-----------------------

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Monit-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been advised.*

Future Tense.

Monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Monit-us, *advised, or, being advised.*

The Participle in *dus*, or the gerundive.

Monen-dus, *to be advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rëgor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Rëg-or,	<i>I am ruled.</i>
reg-ëris, <i>v.</i> reg-ëre,	<i>you are ruled.</i>
reg-itur,	<i>he is ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ïmur,	<i>We are ruled.</i>
reg-ïmïni,	<i>ye are ruled.</i>
reg-untur,	<i>they are ruled.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. Reg-ëbar,	<i>I was ruled.</i>
reg-ëbäris, <i>v.</i> ëbäre,	<i>you were ruled.</i>
reg-ëbätur,	<i>he was ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ëbämur,	<i>We were ruled.</i>
reg-ëbämïni,	<i>ye were ruled.</i>
reg-ëbantur,	<i>they were ruled.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. Rect-us sum, <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been ruled.</i>
rect-us es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>you have been ruled.</i>
rect-us est, <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he has been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i sūmus, <i>v.</i> fuīmus,	<i>We have been ruled.</i>
rect-i estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sunt, fuērunt, <i>v.</i> fuēre,	<i>they have been ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Rect-us ěram, v. fuěram,	<i>I had been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěras, v. fuěras,	<i>you had been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěrat, v. fuěrat,	<i>he had been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i ěrāmus, v. fuěrāmus,	<i>We had been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrātis, v. fuěrātis,	<i>ye had been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrant, v. fuěrant,	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Reg-ar,	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>
reg-ěris, v. reg-ěre,	<i>you will be ruled.</i>
reg-ětur,	<i>he will be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ěmur,	<i>We shall be ruled.</i>
reg-ěmĭni,	<i>ye will be ruled.</i>
reg-entur,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Rect-us ěro, v. fuěro,	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěris, v. fuěris,	<i>you will have been ruled.</i>
rect-us ěrit, v. fuěrit,	<i>he will have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i ěrĭmus v. fuěrĭmus,	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrĭtis, v. fuěrĭtis,	<i>ye will have been ruled.</i>
rect-i ěrunt, v. fuěrint,	<i>they will have been ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Rěg-ěre, reg-ĭtor,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
reg-ĭtor,	<i>let him be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ĭmĭni, reg-ĭmĭnor,	<i>Be ye ruled.</i>
reg-untor,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Reg-ar,	<i>I may be ruled.</i>
reg-āris, v. reg-āre,	<i>you may be ruled.</i>
reg-ātur,	<i>he may be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-āmur,	<i>We may be ruled.</i>
reg-āmĭni,	<i>ye may be ruled.</i>
reg-antur,	<i>they may be ruled.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Reg-ērer,	<i>I might be ruled.</i>
reg-ērēris, v. reg-ērēre,	<i>you might be ruled.</i>
reg-ērētur,	<i>he might be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ērēmur,	<i>We might be ruled.</i>
reg-ērēmīni,	<i>ye might be ruled.</i>
reg-ērentur,	<i>they might be ruled.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Rect-us sim, v. fuērim,	<i>I may have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sis, v. fuēris,	<i>you may have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sit, v. fuērit,	<i>he may have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i sīmus, v. fuērīmus,	<i>We may have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sītis, v. fuērītis,	<i>ye may have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sint, v. fuērīnt,	<i>they may have been ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Rect-us essem, v. fuissem,	<i>I would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i essēmus, v. fuissēmus,	<i>We would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essētis, v. fuissētis,	<i>ye would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Reg-i,	<i>to be ruled.</i>
--------	---------------------

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Rect-um esse, <i>vel</i> fuisse,	<i>to have been ruled.</i>
----------------------------------	----------------------------

Future Tense.

Rect-um īri,	<i>to be about to be ruled.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Rect-us,	<i>ruled, or, being ruled.</i>
----------	--------------------------------

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Regen-dus,	<i>to be ruled.</i>
------------	---------------------

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior. INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard.</i>
aud-īris, v. aud-īre,	<i>you are heard.</i>
aud-ītur,	<i>he is heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-īmur,	<i>We are heard.</i>
aud-īmīni,	<i>ye are heard.</i>
aud-iuntur,	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. Aud-iēbar,	<i>I was heard.</i>
aud-iēbāris, v. aud-iēbāre,	<i>you were heard.</i>
aud-iēbātur,	<i>he was heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iēbāmur,	<i>We were heard.</i>
aud-iēbāmīni,	<i>ye were heard.</i>
aud-iēbantur,	<i>they were heard.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sum, v. fui,	<i>I have been heard.</i>
audīt-us es, v. fuisti,	<i>you have been heard.</i>
audīt-us est, v. fuit,	<i>he has been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i sūmus, v. fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard.</i>
audīt-i estis, v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sunt, fuērunt, v. fuēre,	<i>they have been heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ēram, v. fuēram,	<i>I had been heard.</i>
audīt-us ēras, v. fuēras,	<i>you had been heard.</i>
audīt-us ērat, v. fuērat,	<i>he had been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i ērāmus, v. fuērāmus,	<i>We had been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērātis, v. fuērātis,	<i>ye had been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērant, v. fuērant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Aud-iar,	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
aud-iēris, v. aud-iēre,	<i>you will be heard.</i>
aud-iētur,	<i>he will be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iēmur,	<i>We shall be heard.</i>
aud-iēmīni,	<i>ye will be heard.</i>
aud-ientur,	<i>they will be heard.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ěro, <i>v.</i> fuěro,	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
audit-us ěris, <i>v.</i> fuěris,	<i>you will have been heard.</i>
audit-us ěrit, <i>v.</i> fuěrit,	<i>he will have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i ěrimus, <i>v.</i> fuěrimus,	<i>We shall have been heard.</i>
audit-i ěritis, <i>v.</i> fuěritis,	<i>ye will have been heard.</i>
audit-i ěrunt, <i>v.</i> fuěrint,	<i>they will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Aud-ĭre, aud-ĭtor,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
audi-tor,	<i>let him be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-ĭmini, aud-ĭminor,	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
aud-iuntor,	<i>let them be heard.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Aud-iar,	<i>I may be heard.</i>
aud-iāris, <i>v.</i> aud-iāre,	<i>you may be heard.</i>
aud-iātur,	<i>he may be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iāmur,	<i>We may be heard.</i>
aud-iāmĭni,	<i>ye may be heard.</i>
aud-iantur,	<i>they may be heard.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might be.*

Sing. Aud-ĭrer,	<i>I might be heard.</i>
aud-ĭrĕris, <i>v.</i> aud-ĭrĕre,	<i>you might be heard.</i>
aud-ĭrĕtur,	<i>he might be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-ĭrĕmur,	<i>We might be heard.</i>
aud-ĭrĕmĭni,	<i>ye might be heard.</i>
aud-ĭrentur,	<i>they might be heard.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sim, <i>v.</i> fuěrim,	<i>I may have been heard.</i>
audīt-us sis, <i>v.</i> fuěris,	<i>you may have been heard.</i>
audīt-us sit, <i>v.</i> fuěrit,	<i>he may have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i sĭmus, <i>v.</i> fuěrimus,	<i>We may have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sĭtis, <i>v.</i> fuěritis,	<i>ye may have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sint, <i>v.</i> fuěrint,	<i>they may have been heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have been.*

- Sing. Audīt-us essem, *v. fuisset*, *I would have been heard.*
 audīt-us esses, *v. fuisses*, *you would have been heard.*
 audīt-us esset, *v. fuisset*, *he would have been heard.*
 Plur. Audīt-iessēmus, *v. fuissēmus*, *We would have been heard.*
 audīt-i essētis, *v. fuissētis*, *ye would have been heard.*
 audīt-i essent, *v. fuissent*, *they would have been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Aud-īri, *to be heard.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Audīt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been heard.*

Future Tense.

Audīt-um īri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

Audīt-us, *heard, or, being heard.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Audien-dus, *to be heard.*

~~~~~

The two Participles future, in *rus* and in *dus*, are often so combined with the tenses of *sum*, that a new conjugation called the *periphrastic* conjugation is formed in the following manner:—

#### ACTIVE.

- Pres. Amaturus sum, etc. *I am about to love.*  
 Imperf. Amaturus eram, etc. *I was about to love.*  
 Perf. Amaturus fui, etc. *I have been about to love.*  
 Pluperf. Amaturus fueram, etc. *I had been about to love.*  
 1st Fut. Amaturus ero, etc. *I shall be about to love.*  
 2nd Fut. Amaturus fuero, etc. *I shall have been about to love.*

And the other moods are formed from the indicative, as is shewn in the conjugation of *sum* :

#### PASSIVE.

|          |                 |                                            |
|----------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Pres.    | Amandus sum,    | <i>I am meet to be loved.</i>              |
| Imperf.  | Amandus eram,   | <i>I was meet to be loved.</i>             |
| Perf.    | Amandus fui,    | <i>I have been meet to be loved.</i>       |
| Pluperf. | Amandus fueram, | <i>I had been meet to be loved.</i>        |
| 1st Fut. | Amandus ero,    | <i>I shall be meet to be loved.</i>        |
| 2nd Fut. | Amandus fuero,  | <i>I shall have been meet to be loved.</i> |

DEPONENT verbs are conjugated in this manner :

Hortor, hortāris *v.* hortāre, hortātus sum *v.* fui, hortāri ; hortandi, hortando, hortandum ; hortatum, hortatu ; hortans, hortatus, hortaturus, hortandus :

And so in the other conjugations.

From the third person singular of passive verbs an impersonal verb is formed ; and this third person passive exists in words which neither have, nor are capable of having, a regular passive voice : as,

|                       |   |                |                 |                           |   |                    |                   |
|-----------------------|---|----------------|-----------------|---------------------------|---|--------------------|-------------------|
| Itur, <i>that is,</i> | { | Itur a me,     | <i>I go.</i>    | itum est, <i>that is,</i> | { | itum est a me,     | <i>I went.</i>    |
|                       |   | Itur a te,     | <i>you go.</i>  |                           |   | itum est a te,     | <i>you went.</i>  |
|                       |   | Itur ab illo,  | <i>he goes.</i> |                           |   | itum est ab illo,  | <i>he went.</i>   |
|                       |   | Itur a nobis,  | <i>we go.</i>   |                           |   | itum est a nobis,  | <i>we went.</i>   |
|                       |   | Itur a vobis,  | <i>ye go.</i>   |                           |   | itum est a vobis,  | <i>ye went.</i>   |
|                       |   | Itur ab illis, | <i>they go.</i> |                           |   | itum est ab illis, | <i>they went.</i> |

|         |   |                      |                      |
|---------|---|----------------------|----------------------|
| Future. | { | Eundum est a me,     | <i>I must go.</i>    |
|         |   | Eundum est a te,     | <i>you must go.</i>  |
|         |   | Eundum est ab illo,  | <i>he must go.</i>   |
|         |   | Eundum est a nobis,  | <i>we must go.</i>   |
|         |   | Eundum est a vobis,  | <i>ye must go.</i>   |
|         |   | Eundum est ab illis, | <i>they must go.</i> |

And so in all other tenses. The pronoun is scarcely ever expressed in Latin with these impersonals, but is left to be inferred from the context ; as, *Pugnātum est, they fought ; vivitur, one lives*, etc.

## DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

CERTAIN verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following:—

1. Possum, pōtes, pōtui, posse, pōtens :\* *to be able.*
2. Vōlo, vis, vōlui, velle; vōlendi, vōlendo, vōlendum ;  
vōlens : *to be willing.*
3. Nōlo, nonvis, nōlui, nolle ; nōlendi, nōlendo, nō-  
lendum ; nōlens : *to be unwilling.*
4. Mālo, māvis, mālui, malle ; mālendi, mālendo, mā-  
lendum ; mālens : *to be more willing, or, to have rather.*
5. Ēdo, ēdis, *vel* ēs, ēdi, ēdere *vel* esse : ēdendi, ēden-  
do, ēdendum ; ēsum, ēsu ; ēdens, ēsurus : *to eat.*
6. Fēro, fers, tūli, ferre ; fērendi, fērendo, fērendum ;  
lātum, lātu ; fērens, lātūrus : *to bear, or, suffer.*
7. Fīo, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fīeri ; factus, făcien-  
dus : *to be made, or, done.*
8. Fēror, ferris *vel* ferre, lātus sum *vel* fui, ferri ; lātus,  
fērendus : *to be borne, or, suffered.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |                          |                      | <i>Plural.</i> |                          |           |
|------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| Possum,          | pōtes,                   | pōtest,              | Possūmus,      | potestis,                | possunt.  |
| Vōlo,            | vis,                     | vult,                | vōlūmus,       | vultis,                  | vōlunt.   |
| Nōlo,            | nonvis,                  | nonvult,             | nōlūmus,       | nonvultis,               | nōlunt.   |
| Mālo,            | māvis,                   | māvult,              | mālūmus,       | māvultis,                | mālunt.   |
| Ēdo,             | ēdis, <i>v. es,</i>      | ēdit, <i>v. est,</i> | ēdīmus,        | ēdītis, <i>v. estis,</i> | ēdunt.    |
| Fēro,            | fers,                    | fert,                | fērīmus,       | fertis,                  | fērunt.   |
| Fīo,             | fis,                     | fit,                 | fīmus,         | fitis,                   | fiunt.    |
| Fēror,           | ferris, <i>v. ferre,</i> | fertur,              | fērīmur,       | ferīmini,                | feruntur. |

\*Potens is, however, only actually used as an adjective, in the sense of *powerful*.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I was able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i>                 |        |       | <i>Plural.</i> |         |         |
|----------------------------------|--------|-------|----------------|---------|---------|
| Pöt-eram,                        | ėras   | ėrat, | ėramus,        | ėrātis, | ėrant.  |
| Völē-bam,                        | } bas, | bat,  | bāmus,         | bātis,  | bant.   |
| Nölē-bam,                        |        |       |                |         |         |
| Mālē-bam,                        |        |       |                |         |         |
| Ėdē-bam,                         |        |       |                |         |         |
| Fėrē-bam,                        |        |       |                |         |         |
| Fīē-bam,                         |        |       |                |         |         |
| Fėrē-bar, bāris, v. bāre, bātur, |        |       | bāmur,         | bāmīni, | bantur. |

3. Perfect Tense.—*I have been able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |         |         | <i>Plural.</i> |          |                          |
|------------------|---------|---------|----------------|----------|--------------------------|
| Pöta-i,          | } isti, | it,     | īmus,          | istis,   | ėrunt, <i>vel</i> ėre.   |
| Völu-i,          |         |         |                |          |                          |
| Nölu-i,          |         |         |                |          |                          |
| Mālu-i,          |         |         |                |          |                          |
| Ėd-i,            |         |         |                |          |                          |
| Tül-i,           |         |         |                |          |                          |
| Fact-us,         | sum,    | es,     | est,           | i sūmus, | estis, sunt, v. fuėrunt, |
| Lāt-us,          | v.      | v.      | v.             | v.       | v.                       |
|                  | fui;    | fuisti; | fuit;          | fuīmus;  | fuistis; fuėre.          |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I had been able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |                        |           |           | <i>Plural.</i> |            |           |
|------------------|------------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------|-----------|
| Pötu-eram,       | }                      | ėras,     | ėrat,     | ėrāmus,        | ėrātis,    | ėrant.    |
| Völu-eram,       |                        |           |           |                |            |           |
| Nölu-eram,       |                        |           |           |                |            |           |
| Mālu-eram,       |                        |           |           |                |            |           |
| Ed-eram,         |                        |           |           |                |            |           |
| Tül-eram,        |                        |           |           |                |            |           |
| Făct-us,         | ėram,                  | ėras,     | ėrat,     | i ġrāmus,      | ėrātis,    | ėrant,    |
|                  | <i>v.</i>              | <i>v.</i> | <i>v.</i> | <i>v.</i>      | <i>v.</i>  | <i>v.</i> |
| Lāt-us,          | fuėram ; ėras ; ėrat ; |           |           | fuėrāmus ;     | fuėrātis ; | fuėrant.  |



5. First Future Tense.—*I shall, or, will be able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |               |       | <i>Plural.</i> |         |        |
|------------------|---------------|-------|----------------|---------|--------|
| Põt-ěro,         | ěris,         | ěrit, | ěřimus,        | ěřitis, | ěrunt. |
| Võl-am,          | }             | es,   | ēmus,          | ētis,   | ent.   |
| Nõl-am,          |               |       |                |         |        |
| Māl-am,          |               |       |                |         |        |
| Ėd-am,           |               |       |                |         |        |
| Fěr-am,          |               |       |                |         |        |
| Fī-am,           | }             | et,   | ēmur,          | ēmīni,  | entur. |
| Fěr-ar,          |               |       |                |         |        |
|                  | ěris, v. ěre, | ētur, |                |         |        |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*I shall have been able.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |                        |       | <i>Plural.</i> |                              |         |
|------------------|------------------------|-------|----------------|------------------------------|---------|
| Põtuěro,         | }                      | ěris, | ěřimus,        | ěřitis,                      | ěrint.  |
| Võluěro,         |                        |       |                |                              |         |
| Nõluěro,         |                        |       |                |                              |         |
| Māluěro,         |                        |       |                |                              |         |
| Ėděro,           |                        |       |                |                              |         |
| Tũlěro,          | }                      | ěrit, | Facti,         | ěřimus,                      | ěřitis, |
| Factus,          |                        |       |                |                              |         |
|                  | ěro,                   | ěris, | Facti,         | ěřimus,                      | ěřitis, |
|                  | v.                     | v.    |                | v.                           | v.      |
| Lātus,           | fuěro, fuěris, fuěrit, |       | Lati,          | fuěřimus, fuěřitis, fuěrint. |         |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, and malo*, have no Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—*be thou unwilling, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i>                  | <i>Plural.</i>                     |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Nõli, nõlito ;                    | nõlīte, nõlītōte.                  |
| Ėde, ědito, <i>vel</i> Es, esto ; | ědīte, ědītōte, <i>vel</i> , este, |
| ědito, <i>vel</i> , esto ;        | estote ; ědunto.                   |
| Fer, ferto ; ferta ;              | ferte, fertote ; ferunto.          |
| Fi, fito ; fito ;                 | fite, fitote ; fiunto.             |
| Fer-re, -tor ; fertor ;           | fěřimīn-i, -or ; feruntor.         |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I may be able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i>                          |     |     | <i>Plural.</i> |        |        |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|-----|----------------|--------|--------|
| Poss-im,<br>Vël-im,<br>Nöl-im,<br>Mäl-im, | is, | it, | īmus,          | ītis,  | int.   |
| Ēd-am,                                    |     |     |                |        |        |
| Fër-am,                                   |     |     |                |        |        |
| Fī-am,                                    |     |     |                |        |        |
| Fër-ar, -āris, v. āre ; ātur,             | as, | at, | āmus,          | ātis,  | ant.   |
|                                           |     |     | āmur,          | āmīni, | antur. |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I might be able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i>                             |     |     | <i>Plural.</i> |        |        |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|-----|----------------|--------|--------|
| Poss-em,<br>Vell-em,<br>Noll-em,<br>Mall-em, | es, | et, | ēmus,          | ētis,  | ent.   |
| Ēdër-em,                                     |     |     |                |        |        |
| vel,                                         |     |     |                |        |        |
| Ess-em,                                      |     |     |                |        |        |
| Ferr-em,                                     |     |     |                |        |        |
| Fīër-em,                                     |     |     |                |        |        |
| Ferr-er, -ēris, v. ēre ; ētur,               |     |     | ēmur,          | ēmīni, | entur. |

3. Perfect Tense.—*I may have been able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i>                                     |                     |  | <i>Plural.</i>                  |          |          |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--|---------------------------------|----------|----------|
| Pötu-ërim,<br>Völu-ërim,<br>Nölu-ërim,<br>Mälu-ërim, | ëris, ërit,         |  | ëřīmus,                         | ëřītis,  | ëřint.   |
| Ēd-ërim,                                             |                     |  |                                 |          |          |
| Tül-ërim,                                            |                     |  |                                 |          |          |
| Fact-us,                                             |                     |  |                                 |          |          |
|                                                      | sim, sis, sit,      |  | i sīmus,                        | sītis,   | sint,    |
|                                                      | v. v. v.            |  | v. v. v.                        | v. v. v. | v. v. v. |
| Lāt-us,                                              | fuë-rim; ris; rit ; |  | fuëřīmaus ; fuëřītis ; fuëřint. |          |          |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I should have been able, &c.*

| <i>Singular.</i> |   |                        | <i>Plural.</i>                  |    |    |
|------------------|---|------------------------|---------------------------------|----|----|
| Pötu-issem,      | } | isses, isset,          | issemus, issētis, issent.       |    |    |
| Völu-issem,      |   |                        |                                 |    |    |
| Nölu-issem,      |   |                        |                                 |    |    |
| Mälu-issem,      |   |                        |                                 |    |    |
| Ēd-issem,        |   |                        |                                 |    |    |
| Tül-issem,       |   |                        |                                 |    |    |
| Fact-us,         | { | essem, esses, esset,   | i essēmus, essētis, essent,     | v. | v. |
| Iāt-us,          |   | v. v. v.               |                                 |    |    |
|                  |   | fuissem; isses; isset; | fuiſsēmus; fuiſsētis; fuissent. |    |    |

5. Future Tense.—*I may be about to eat, &c.*

|         |   |                |                       |
|---------|---|----------------|-----------------------|
| Ēsurus  | } | sim, sis, sit, | i sīmus, sītis, sint. |
| Lāturus |   |                |                       |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—*to be able, &c.*

|        |                           |
|--------|---------------------------|
| Posse. | Ēdere, <i>vel</i> , esse. |
| Velle. | Ferre.                    |
| Nolle. | Fiēri.                    |
| Malle. | Ferri.                    |

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—*to have been able, &c.*

|           |                                   |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| Pötuisse. | Ēdisse.                           |
| Völuisse. | Tülisse.                          |
| Nöluisse. | Factum esse, <i>vel</i> , fuisse. |
| Mäluisse. | Lātum esse, <i>vel</i> , fuisse.  |

Future Tense.—*to be about to eat, &c.*

|               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| Ēsūrum esse.  | Factum iri. |
| Lātūrum esse. | Lātum iri.  |

Obs. *Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive mood.

*EO, to go*, is also a verb irregular.

*Eo*, is, \*īvi, īre, eundi, eundo, eundum, ĩtum, ĩtu, iens, ĩtūrus.

*Indic. M.* } *Sing.* *Eo*, is, it.    *Pl.* *Imus, itis, eunt.*  
*Pres. T.* }

\* In all the compounds of *eo*, as *redeo, abeo*, etc. this tense is almost invariably found *ii*, not *ivi*; as, *redii, abii* etc.

*Imp. Tense. Sing.* Ibam, ibas, ibat. *Pl.* -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

*Perf. Tense.* Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, ivērunt, v. ēre.

*Pluperf. Tense.* Ivēram, -as, -at; -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

*First Fut. Sing.* Ibo, ibis, ibit. *Pl.* -īmus, -ītis, -unt.

*2nd Fut.* Ivēro, ivēris, ivērit; ivērīmus, ivērītis, ivērīnt.

*Imp. M. Sing.* I, ito; ito. *Pl.* ite, itote; eunto.

*Potent. M. Pres. Sing.* Eam, eas, eat. *Pl.* Eāmus, eātis,

*Imperf.* Irem, etc. [eant.

*Perf.* Ivērim, etc.

*Pluperf.* Ivissem, etc.

*Fut.* Iturus sim, etc.

*Gerunds*; Eundi, eundo, eundum.

*Participle Pres. T.* Iens, gen. eūntis.

*Participle Future, Itūrus.\**

*Obs.* In like manner are the compounds of *Eo* declined, also *queo*, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable; except that these last two have no Imperative mood or Gerunds.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

**VERBS** are called *defective*, that have only some particular Tenses and Persons; as,

**AIO**, *I say.*

*Ind. M. Pres. T. S.* Aio, ais, ait. *Pl.* ——— Aiunt.

*Imp. T. Sing.* Aiē-bam, -bas, -bat. *Pl.* -bamus, -batis, -bant.

*Perf. Tense. Sing.* — Ait.

*Sub. or Potent. M. Pres. T. Sing.* — Aias, aiat. *Pl.* aiant.

*Particip. Pres. Tense.* Aiens.

**FARI**, *to speak.*

*Pres. 3d. Sing.* Fātur.

*Perf.* Fātus sum, es, etc.

*Pluperf.* Fātus eram, etc.

*First Fut.* Fābor—no other person.

\* *Eo* has no passive voice except in the third sing. used as an impersonal verb, as has been shewn above (p. 57,) and the passive participle in *dus*, or gerundive *eundus*; but some of its compounds, *ādeo*, to approach, *prætereo*, to pass by, &c. have a passive voice, formed regularly from the active; as, *adeor*, *adiris*, *aditur*, etc. imperf. *adibar*, etc.

*Imper.* Fāre.

*Gerunds.* Fandi, Fando.

*Supine.* Fatu. — *Part. Perf.* Fatus. — *Part. Pass.*  
[Fandus.]

AVE, Hail !

*Imper. M. Sing.*—Āve, āvēto.—*Pl.* Āvēte, āvētōte.—  
*Infinitive Mood.* Āvēre.

SALVE, Hail !

*Indicat. M. Future T. Sing.* — Salvēbis.

*Imper. M. S.*—Salve, salveto.—*Pl.* Salvēte, salvētōte.  
*Infinitive M.* Salvēre.

CEDO, Give me.

*Imper. M. Sing.*—Cēdo.—*Pl.*—Cette.\*

QUÆSO, I pray.

*Indic. M. Pres. T. S.* Quæso. *Pl.* Quæsumus.

INQUAM, I say.

*Ind. M. Pres. T. S.* Inquam, -quis, -quit. *Pl.* In-  
quimus, inquitis, inquit.

*Preterimp. T. S.*—Inquiebat. *Pl.*—Inquiebant.

*Preterp. T. S.* —Inquisti.

*Future T. Sing.* —Inquies, inquiet.

*Cæpi*, I have begun, *mēmīni*, I remember, *nōvi*, I know, *odi*, I hate, are perfects of obsolete presents, (except *novi*, which is also the perfect of *nosco*,) and have these tenses only which are derived from the perfect. Their pluperfect tense has the sense of the imperfect; i.e. *memineram*, "I did remember," not, "I had remembered," etc. and the second future has the sense of the first future; as, *odero* "I shall hate," not "I shall have hated."

|                                   |                                     |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Cæpi</i> ,                     | <i>Mēmīni</i> ,                     | (So, <i>ôdi</i> , <i>nōvi</i> .) |
| <i>Cæpisti</i> ,                  | <i>Mēmīnisti</i> ,                  |                                  |
| <i>Cæpit</i> ,                    | <i>Mēmīnit</i> ,                    |                                  |
| <i>Cæpimus</i> ,                  | <i>Mēmīnimus</i> ,                  |                                  |
| <i>Cæpistis</i> ,                 | <i>Mēmīnistis</i> ,                 |                                  |
| <i>Cæperunt</i> , <i>v. ēre</i> . | <i>Mēmīnērunt</i> , <i>v. ēre</i> . |                                  |

\* Found only in the oldest writers.

*Pluperf.* Cæpëram, meminëram, ôdëram, nôvēram.

*Future.* Cæpëro, mēmīnëro, ôdëro, nôvēro.

*Imper.* Memento, mēmentôte.—The other verbs have no imperative.

*Potent. Perf.* Cæpërim, mēmīnërim, ôdërim, nôvērim.

*Pluperf.* Cæpissēm, meminissēm, odissem, novissēm.

*Infīn.* Cæpisse, mēmīnisse, ôdisse, nôvisse.

*Part. fut. act.* Cæpturus, ôsūrus.—The others have no participle.

*Perf. part. pass.* Cæptus.

*Ausim*, I may dare, an old form of the present subjunctive of *audeo*.

Ausim, ausis, ausit ;——ausint.

*Faxim*, I may do, a similar form from *facio*.

Faxim, faxis, faxit ; faximus, faxitis, faxint.

*Fut.* faxo.

## ADVERBS.

An *Adverb* is a part of speech joined to verbs and nouns adjective (sometimes even to other adverbs) to qualify them ; as, *loquitur bēne*, he speaks well ; *scribunt mālē*, they write badly.\*

## CONJUNCTIONS.

A *Conjunction* is a part of speech which joins sentences or words together : some connect things of the same kind, and are called *copulative conjunctions* ; some connect things which are distinct from each other, and are called *disjunctive conjunctions*.—The copulative conjunctions are *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *neq̄on*, “and,” *nēque*, “nor,” *quàm*, “than.”—The disjunctive conjunctions are *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, *sive*, *seu*, “or.”

---

\* When derived from adjectives, adverbs have comparative and superlative degrees, formed from the corresponding degrees of the adjectives ; as, from *doctus* learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*, are derived *docte* learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctissime* most learnedly.

## PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is a part of speech which governs a case, and which expresses the relation of nouns to one another, or to verbs ; as, *iter per Italiam*, a journey through Italy ; *exit e domo*, he goes out of the house.

These Prepositions have an *Accusative* case after them :

|                                                                             |                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ad</i> , to.                                                             | <i>P̄enes</i> , in the power of.                                                            |
| <i>Adversum</i> , <i>Adversus</i> , against, towards.                       | <i>Per</i> , through.                                                                       |
| <i>Ante</i> , before.                                                       | <i>Pōne</i> , behind.                                                                       |
| <i>Apud</i> , at, or near.                                                  | <i>Post</i> , after.                                                                        |
| <i>Circa</i> , <i>circum</i> , about.                                       | <i>Præter</i> , besides, except, before (as, <i>præter cæteros</i> , before others.)        |
| <i>Circiter</i> , about (of time, or number.)                               | <i>Prōpe</i> , (and compar. and superl. <i>prōpius</i> , <i>proxime</i> ) nigh, or near to. |
| <i>Cis</i> , <i>citra</i> , on this side,                                   | <i>Propter</i> , on account of, near to.                                                    |
| <i>Contra</i> , against.                                                    | <i>Sēcundum</i> , according to.                                                             |
| <i>Erga</i> , towards.                                                      | <i>Supra</i> , above.                                                                       |
| <i>Extra</i> , without.                                                     | <i>Trans</i> , on the further side.                                                         |
| <i>Infra</i> , beneath, below.                                              | <i>Versus</i> , towards.                                                                    |
| <i>Inter</i> , between, or among.                                           | <i>Ultra</i> , beyond.                                                                      |
| <i>Intra</i> , within.                                                      |                                                                                             |
| <i>Juxta</i> , beside, or near to.                                          |                                                                                             |
| <i>Ob</i> , on account of, before, (as <i>ob oculos</i> , before the eyes.) |                                                                                             |

The Prepositions following have an *Ablative* case after them :

|                                                      |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>A</i> , (and before vowels <i>ab</i> )* from, by. | <i>E</i> , <i>ex</i> , from, out of, in (as <i>ex ordine</i> , in order.) |
| <i>Absque</i> , without.                             | <i>Præ</i> ,† before, in comparison of, on account of.                    |
| <i>Coram</i> , before, or in presence of.            | <i>Pro</i> , for, in front of.                                            |
| <i>Cum</i> , with.                                   | <i>Sine</i> , without.                                                    |
| <i>De</i> , from, concerning.                        | <i>Tēnus</i> , up to, as far as.‡                                         |

\* Before *te*, *abs* is also used in the same sense by Cicero, and before other words by Terence and older writers. It is never used in poetry.

† *Præ* signifies of *place*, with verbs of motion only, and with pronouns.

‡ *Tēnus* is used also with a genitive, when the noun is in the plural number ; and once by Livy with a noun in the singular ; *Corcyræ tēnus*, as far as Corcyra.

The prepositions *versus* and *tenuis* are always, *penes* sometimes, put after the noun governed by them: so, when the noun governed by them is the relative, *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*, are also placed sometimes after their case: when *cum* is joined with *me*, *nobis*, *te*, *vobis*, *se*, or the relative, it is put after them, and united with them so as to make one word; as, *mecum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum*, etc.

The Prepositions following have either an Accusative or an Ablative case after them:

*In*, for *into*, signifying motion *towards*, *against*, *over*, etc. has an accusative case; as, *Eo in urbem*, I go into the city.

*In*, meaning "in," has the ablative case; as, *In illo spes est*, my hope is in him.

*Sub*, after verbs of motion, governs an accusative case, and also when it denotes time; as, *Mittitur sub jugum*, he is sent under the yoke; *sub noctem*, about nightfall. When it means "under," it governs an ablative case; as, *Sub terrâ*, under the earth.

*Subter*, under, beneath, governs the accusative; the ablative only in poetry; (it is very rarely used at all.)

*Sûper*, when it means "on, above, besides," governs the accusative case; as, *Sûper terram*, above the earth: when it means "concerning, about," it governs the ablative; as, *Rôgî-tans multa sûper Priamo*, asking many things about Priam. Besides these regular prepositions, some adverbs are used occasionally as prepositions, especially in poetry.

With the Accusative:

*Usque* (properly, and more usually, in good prose invariably, *usque ad*,) as far as.

With the Ablative:

*Pâlam*, in the presence of.

*Pröcul*, (properly, and more usually, *procul a*,) far from.

*Simul*, (only poetically for *simul cum*,) together with.

With the Accusative or Ablative:

*Clam*, without the knowledge of, (the accusative, however, is very rare and antiquated.)



## OF AN INTERJECTION.

AN INTERJECTION is a part of speech which betokens a sudden motion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or other passion.

## THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three Concorde, or Agreements, in Latin:

1. Between the nominative case and the verb.
2. Between the substantive and the adjective.
3. Between the antecedent and the relative.

## THE FIRST CONCORD.

A VERB agrees with its nominative case in number and person.

In order to find out the nominative case, ask the question *who*, or *what*? with the verb; and the word that answers to the question, is the nominative case to the verb; as, *who reads?* *who regard not?*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not,  
*Præceptor* <sup>b</sup>legit, *vos verò* <sup>b</sup>negligitis.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a neuter substantive in the nominative, in which case the verb agrees with that, as if it were a noun; as,

*Diluculò* <sup>a</sup>*surgere saluberrimum* <sup>b</sup>est,  
 To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

When two or more substantives are so joined in one sentence, that the verb depends on both or on all of them, the verb is usually put in the plural number, and agrees especially with the nominative case of the most worthy person:\* when, however, the nouns denote things, not persons, the verb is often kept in the singular number; as, *Ego et tu sumus in tuto*, I and you are in safety: *Cùm tempus necessitasque postulat*, when time and necessity require.

---

\* In grammatical language, the first person is reckoned more worthy than the second, and the second than the third.

Sometimes also a noun of multitude, (that is, a noun expressing more persons or things than one,) though in the singular number itself, is followed by a verb in the plural number; as, *Turba ruunt*, the crowd rushes on.

When the nominative case to the verb is a personal pronoun, it is usually omitted in Latin, unless particular emphasis be desired; as, He governs France, *Regit Galliam*: I am wiser than you, *Ego sum te sapientior*.

## THE SECOND CONCORD.

The adjective agrees with its substantive in case, gender, and number; as,

<sup>a</sup>*Amicus* <sup>b</sup>*certus* in <sup>a</sup>*re* <sup>b</sup>*incertâ* cernitur,  
A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

When two or more substantives come together in one sentence, and have one adjective referring to all of them, the adjective is put in the plural number, and as to gender agrees with the substantive of the most worthy gender, (the masculine being accounted more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy than the neuter.) But, when the nouns denote things, the adjective is often put in the neuter; when they denote both persons and things, the adjective may either agree with the noun denoting the person, or be put in the neuter gender; as, *Mihi pater et mater mortui sunt*, my father and mother are dead: *Ira et âvaritia potentia sunt*, anger and avarice are powerful.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a noun of the neuter gender, and the adjective agrees with it as if it were such a noun; and sometimes an entire sentence supplies the place of the substantive, and the adjective which is applied to it is put in the neuter gender; as, *Errare humanum est*, to err is human.

Sometimes, when persons are denoted by neuter substantives, the adjective, nevertheless, is put in the

masculine or feminine gender ; as, *Millia triginta servōrum capti sunt*, thirty thousand slaves were taken.

When in English the word *man*, or *thing*, is put with an adjective, you may in Latin leave out the substantive, and put the adjective in the masculine or neuter gender ; as,

*Multi falluntur*, many men are deceived.

*Multa me impediērunt*, many things have hindered me.

### THE THIRD CONCORD.

WHEN you have a relative, ask this question, *who*, or *what*? with the verb ; and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the antecedent to the relative.

The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person ; as,

<sup>a</sup> *Vir sapit*, <sup>b</sup> *qui pauca loquitur*,

The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

If the relative refers to two antecedents, or more, then it is put in the plural number ; and if they be of different persons, the relative agrees with the antecedent of the more worthy person ; as, *Ego et tu qui ērāmus dōmi*, I and you who were at home.

Sometimes a sentence supplies the place of the antecedent, and in this case the relative is put in the neuter gender ; as, *In tempore vēni, quod rērum omnium est primum*, I came in time, which is the most important thing of all.

When the relative is placed between two substantives, to both of which it refers, it commonly agrees with the latter ; as, *Animal quem vocāmus hōminem*, the animal which we call man.

**PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS,  
QUÆ GENUS,  
AS IN PRÆSENTI,  
SYNTAXIS,  
ET PROSODIA.**



# THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

## SUBSTANTIVES.

### I.

*PROPRIA quæ maribus tribuuntur mascula dicas ;  
 Ut sunt Divorum, Mars, Bacchus, Apollo ; Virorum,  
 Ut Cato, Virgilius ; Fluviorum, ut Tiberis, Orontes ;  
 Mensium, ut October ; Ventorum, ut Libs, Nötus, Auster ;  
 Montium, ut Ossa ; Alpīs tamen est muliebris, et Cæta, 5  
 Cyllēnē, Rhödōpe, et cæcis gravis ignibus Ætna ;  
 Pēlion est neutrum ; Sōractē, Cēraunia, neutra.*

### II.

*Propria fæmineum referentia nomina sexum,  
 Fæmineo generi tribuuntur ; sive Dearum  
 Sunt, ut Jūnō, Vēnus ; Muliebria, ut Anna, Phīlōtis ; 10  
 Urbium, ut Elis, Opus ; Regionum, ut Græcia, Persis :  
 Insulæ item nomen, ceu Crēta, Brītannia, Cyp̄rus.  
 Neutrum Dūlichium, ventura ut regula monstrat :  
 Quasdam etiam excipias urbes, nam mascula Sulmo,  
 Et Delphi, et similes ; genus est utrumque Sēlinus, 15  
 Pharsālus, et Mārāthon : Quædam neutralia, ut Argos,  
 Tuscūlum, item Tībur, luxuque imbelle Tārentum,  
 Pergāmaque, et quot in a finem pluraliā præstant.  
 Fæmineum et neutrum Præneste dat, Ilion, Anxur.  
 Est neutrum Lātium, mas Bosphōrus, adjice Pontus. 20*

### III.

*Fæminei generis gemmarum nomina disces,  
 Sapphīrus veluti ; ast opālus mas, atque smāragdus :  
 Arborum item œernes muliebria nomina, ut alnus,  
 Cūpressus, cedrus ; mas spīnus, mas oleaster.  
 Cætera in er neutrale genus plerumque videbis, 25  
 Quale pāpāver, ācer : queis thus atque adjice rōbur.  
 Adjungunt muliebre mari cýtisusque, rūbusque ;  
 Intūbus in numero plurali habet intūba neutrum.  
 Nomina sunt volucrum, ceu passer, hīrundo ; ferarum.*

*Ut felis, vulpes ; et piscium, ut ostrea, cētus, 30*  
*Dicta epicæna, quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.*  
*Multa etiam commune dabunt genus ; ut lēpus, anser,*  
*Vespertilio, mus, grus, bos, cānis, atque ēlēphantus :*  
*Fæmineumque mari jungunt sus, tīgris, et anguis,*  
*Et serpens, dāmæque, et egentes lumine talpæ. 35*

## IV. DECLENSION I.

*As, es, mascula erunt ; a, e, inflexio prima,*  
*Fæminei generis, prohibet nisi sensus, habebit.*  
*Mas Bōreas, sātrāpes ; muliebris litēra, Circe ;*  
*Sed mas scribe genus, sic scurra, athlēta, lānista.*

## V. DECLENSION II.

*Um neutrale, us et er dat mas plerumque secunda. 40*  
*Sic regnum neutrum, dōmīnus mas atque māgister :*  
*Sed quæ dicta supra sunt, excipienda legenti*  
*Pauca dabunt, nam arbor mālus muliebris, et urbis*  
*Nomen Abȳdus erit, sic alvus, hūmus, cōlus, atque*  
*Carbasus, et vannus ; sic Nilo nota phāselus ; 45*  
*Pauca etiam occurrent Græcis deducta, pāpȳrus,*  
*Antīdōtus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, et illa*  
*Os breve quot claudit, ceu Dēlos, Sestos, et Isthmos.*  
*Sed vīrus, pēlāgus neutralia, et adjice vulgus,*  
*Interdum quamvis hoc inter mascula ponas ; 50*  
*Non genus est ullum quo non pēnus invenietur.*

## VI. DECLENSION III.—MASCULINES.

*Tertiū quas voces lectori inflexio reddit*  
*Crede mares, si claudit or, os, er, o quoque rectum,*  
*Vel quas es finit, crescitque quibus genitivus.*  
*Sic hōnor, atque hēros, crāter, sermoque, tāpesque ; 55*  
*At soror atque uxor muliebria semper, et arbor ;*

*Sed cor, marmor, ādor neutralia semper, et æquor.  
Sic est fæminei generis cos, dosque, sed os seu  
Oris habet sive ossis erit neutrale, chaosque  
Et mēlos, atque alia à linguā deducta Pelasgā. 60  
Mas tūber est fructus, sed erit muliebris ut arbor ;  
Linter communis ; neutrum ver, verber, et ūber,  
Atque cādāver, īter, spinther, quibus adjice tuber.  
Atque per er finita notant quot nomina plantas.  
Excipias quoque, lector, hyperdissyllabon in do, 65  
Et quot io claudit verbo deducta, libīdo,  
Formīdoque velut ; sic dictio, lectio ; porro  
Est cāro atque ēcho atque Argo et muliebris īmāgo ;  
Cūm notat affectum muliebris rite cūpīdo est ;  
Et tamen hoc vates interdum in mascula cogunt. 70  
Pauca per es finita licet crescentia discas  
Fæminei generis ; merges, mercesque, quiesque,  
Et tēgēs atque sēges ; quādrupes communis, et āles,  
Atque obses, cōmēs, atque hospes, quibus adjice princeps.*

VII. DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

*Omne quod exit in as, īs, ŷs, aus, x, es quoque, quando 75  
Non genitivo crescit, erit muliebre ; superque  
Præbet idem genus s liquidā præeunte memento.  
Sic piētas, fraus, atque chlām̄ys, nāvisque, rātisque,  
Pax, rādix, nūbes, et hyems, mors ; excipe pauca ;  
Mas erit as assis, compostaque ; mas ēlēphasque, 80  
Et quidquid Græcum genitivo habet antis, ut Atlas,  
Atque gigas, ādāmas ; e sensu vas vādis est mas ;  
Vas vāsis neutrum, sic fas neutrale, nefasque.  
Multa quoque is finita videbis mascula ; pulvis,  
Et pollis, cucumis, sanguis, lapis, amnis, et axis, 85  
Glis, caulis, cassis, cūm non crescit genitivo,  
(Cassis enim, venit à quo cassīdis, est muliebre,)  
Collis, fascis, follis, funis, pestis, et ensis,  
Ignis, pānis, piscis, postis, et adjice mensis,  
Orbis, sentis, torris, vectis, vermis, et unguis, 90  
Nātāl̄is ; numero et primo quæ rarius exstant,*



*Annāles, rapidisque jūgālībus adde mōlāres.*  
*Quinetiam cernes communia pauca, cānālis,*  
*Et scrōbis, et torquis, callis, fīnis, cīnis; etsi*  
*Hæc duo plurali apparent tibi mascula tantum: 95*  
*Et, quoniam nunc vir nunc fœmina dicitur, hostis*  
*Est commune genus, cīvis, testis, pātruelis.*  
*Est data lex potior cur mas Hālys exstet, et Othrys.*  
*Mascula nulla es non crescens dat, ācīnāce dempto;*  
*At vātes commune, vēpres etiam, atque pālumbes. 100*  
*Quæ Græca ax finit, sunt plurima mascula, thōrax,*  
*Et cordax, anthrax; sic ex quæ plurima claudit,*  
*Qualis āpex, cōdex, cīmex, cortexque, cūlexque,*  
*Grex, vertex, mūrex, pūlex, caudexque, sīlexque:*  
*Pauca per ix finita, cālix, fornix, ita phœnix; 105*  
*Græcaque in yx, ut ōnyx, et ōryx, bombyxque, cālyxque:*  
*Sic quincunx, septunx, et cætera masculu: porro*  
*Mascula ādeps, dens, fons, mons, pons, hŷdropsque,*  
*chālybsque;*  
*Gryps, torrens, ōriensque, rūdensque, bīdensque, tri-*  
*densque:*  
*Mascula ēpopsque mēropsque, et stirps communis*  
*habetur. 110*

## VIII. DECLENSION III.—NEUTERS

*Quæ claudunt a, e, i, y, c, neutra leguntur.*  
*l, n, t, ar, ur, us; videas exempla; poēma,*  
*Et märe, mīsŷ, sīnāpi, ālec, lac, mel, ānīmalque,*  
*Carmen, et adde cāput, lāquear, jēcū, adjice tempus.*  
*Mascula sol, mūgil; sic sal plerumque, sālesque 115*  
*Plurali semper.—Communia præsul et exul,*  
*Atque vīgil; fīdīcen, ren, pecten mascula; et addas*  
*Deducta à Græcā linguā paucissima, delphin,*  
*Līchen, et pæan, primāque è lege Cīthæron,*  
*Sindon, atque īcon muliebria sunt, et Āmazon, 120*  
*Et numero Alcyones quæ primo rarius exstant:*  
*Significans socium par mas, mas turtur, et augur,*  
*Fur, vultur, sic furfur: in us muliebria pauca,*

*Ut virtus, incus, tellus, pālus, atque jūventus,  
Atque pēcus pēcūdis, pēcōris dans accipe neutrum.* 125

IX. DECLENSION IV.

*U neutrum, ut cornu ; mas us, ceu cursus et actus ;  
Porticus atque trībus muliebria, ācusque, dōmusque,  
Et mānus, et quercus, sic cum quinquātrībus īdus ;  
Sensus ānus, nūrus, et socrus muliebria monstrat.*

X. DECLENSION V.

*Quinta genus muliebre dat, ut spes ; at numero mas  
Pluruli tantum, primo commune dies est.* 131

XI. ADJECTIVES.

*Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia formam,  
Ut felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub und.  
Sub geminā si voce cadunt, velut omnis et omne,  
Vox commune duūm prior est, vox altera neutrum.* 135  
*At si tres variant voces, sācer ut, sācra, sācrum,  
Vox prima est mas, altera fāemina, tertia neutrum.*

*Sunt quēis plurales casus in a non adhibentur,  
Pauper, īnops, pūber, sospes, cum dēgēner, ūber,  
Et dīves, lōcūples, mēmōr, immēmōr, atque sūperstes.* 140

NOUNS HETEROCLITE, OR IRREGULAR.

*Quæ genus aut flexum variant, quæcunque novato  
Ritu deficiunt, superantve, Heteroclita sunt.*

*Hæc genus in variis numeris variantia cernis :*

*Nam primo maria hæc numero sunt, neutra secundo :  
 Tartārus horribilis, sic sībīlus, intūbus exstant ; 5  
 Plurali jocus at numero genus addit utrumque,  
 Et locus ; hæc primo muliebria, neutra secundo :  
 Pergāmos, et lautis exquirenda ostrea cœnis,  
 Carbāsus ; hæc primo neutrum, mas altero habebunt,  
 Et siser, et cœlum, Junonique Argos amatum : 10  
 Rastrum plurali et frenum genere exstat utroque,  
 Quin ĕpulum primo, ast ĕpulæ plurale leguntur.*

*Quæ sequitur manca est casu, numerove propago :*

*His neutris nullos poteris tu cernere casus,  
 Nī qui sunt, ut scis, tibi semper in hoc genere idem ; 15  
 Hippōmānes, cǎcōēthēs, ĕpos, mēlos, adjice gummi,  
 Et fās, māne, nihil, pondo, instar ; grata perenni  
 Sub Zephyro Tempe plurali ; tot, quot, et omnes  
 A tribus ad centum numeri, quæ aptota vocantur.*

*Sunt quoque rectus abest quēis casus nomina multa, 20  
 Aut alii, nullo certo ordine deficientes.  
 Ut fors, frūgis, ōpis, dāpis, et vīcis, impētis, et vis,  
 Verbēris, et fīdis, atque lues, sordemque, vepremque ;  
 Quin ablativo solo sunt pauca videnda,  
 Ut sunt compēde, fauce, prēce, atque ambāge ; sed omnia  
 Integra plurali numero plerumque leguntur, 26  
 Sic jussu, nātu, permissu, sponte ; rōgātu,  
 Mandātu ; sed et his pluralis deficit, atque  
 Occurrent quoque plura suo tibi tempore quæque.*

*Hæc numerum nunquam (prohibet nam sensus) habebunt  
 Pluralem ; cœnum, līmus, sic trītīcum, et aurum, 31  
 Argentum, et paria ; his pietas addenda, pūdorque,  
 Et sītis, atque fāmes, infantia, firma juvenus,  
 Atque sēnecta gravis, vel (vox magis apta) sēnectus,  
 Ver, vesper, lētum, spēcīmen, victusque, sūpellexque,  
 Et vīrus, sanguis, plebs, atque ignobile vulgus ; 36  
 Cum paucis aliis ; sic nomina propria cuncta.*

## Nouns defective in the Singular Number.

*Mascula sunt tantum numero contenta secundo,  
Mānes, majōres, cancelli, libēri, et antes,  
Prīmōres, prōcēres, fasti simul, atque mīnōres, 40  
Inferi, item Sūpēri, lēmūres, quibus adde Pēnātes,  
Et loca plurali, quales Gābiique, Lōcrique,  
Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.*

*Hæc sunt fæminei generis, numerique secundi ;  
Exūviæ, phālēræ, grātes, et ineptiæ, et idus, 45  
Blanditiæ, induciæ ; simul insidiæque, mīnæque,  
Excūbiæ, nōnæ, nūgæ, tricæque, calendæ,  
Quisquiliæ, thermæ, cūnæ, dīræ, exēquiæque,  
Fēriæ, et infēriæ ; sic prīmītiæque, plāgæque,  
Dēliciæ, tēnēbræque, et valvæ, divitiæque, 50  
Nuptiæ item, et lactes : addantur Thēbæ et Athēnæ ;  
Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.*

*Rariùs hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur ;  
Mœnia, cum tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,  
Arma, mǎpalia ; sic bellāria, mūnia, castra : 55  
Fusus justa petit, petit et sponsalia virgo ;  
Rostra disertus amat, puerique crepundia gestant,  
Infantesque colunt cūnābula : consulit exta  
Augur, sacra piæ connectunt sarta puellæ.  
Festa deum poterunt, ceu Bacchānalia, jungi : 60  
Quod si plura leges, licet huc quoque classe reponas.*

## Nouns declined after both the second and fourth Declensions.

*Invenies porro tu nomina pauca secunda  
Quosdam etiam casus, lector, sumentia quarta,  
Atque is præcipue, atque e dedignantia fines,  
Ut laurus, necnon ficus, domus, altaque pinus, 65  
Et colus, et cornus, vivisque invisæ cupressus.*

OF THE  
PERFECT TENSE, AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

Of the Perfect Tense of simple Verbs.

I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

*As in præsenti perfectum format in avi,*  
*Ut no nas nāvi, vōcīto vōcītas vōcītavi ;*  
*Deme lāvo lāvi, jūvo jūvi ; quin cūbo semper*  
*Dat cūhui, sēco dat sēcui, mīcui mīco reddit ;*  
*Sic frīco dat frīcui, dōmo dat dōmui, a sōno semper* 5  
*Formatur sōnui, tōnuīque tōno generabit ;*  
*Adde crēpo tibi quod crēpui, vēto quod vētui dat ;*  
*Interdum nēcō dat necui, plerumque necavi.*  
*Sæpius applicui dabit applico, rarius -avi, at*  
*Supplicō, multiplicō, semper formantur in āvi :* 10  
*Quippe dēdi do das, sto stas formare stēti vult.*

II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Es in præsenti perfectum format ui dans ;*  
*Ut nīgreo nīgres nīgrui, mōneo mōnui dat,*  
*Et geminum fugiens u, lingueo languī habebit.*  
*Sed multa ingenuus puer excipienda videbit :* 15  
*Fit veo vi, ut mōveo mōvi, cāveo quoque cāvi ;*  
*Ferveo item fervi, sed sæpe et fervui habebit.*  
*Dat fleo fles flēvi, neo nēvi, dēleo format*  
*Dēlēvi ; exōleo et verbum simile omne dat -evi,*  
*Compleo complēvi format, rēpleoque rēplēvi.* 20  
*Dat cieo cīvi, sed raro preteritum exstat.*  
*Plurima sunt quorum perfectum desinit in si,*  
*Ut jūbeo jussi, maneo mansi, ardeo et arsi,*  
*Mulceo mulsi, suadeo suasi, rīdeo risi ;*  
*Hæreo sic hæsi formabit, torqueo torsi.* 25  
*L vel r ante geo si stet, geo vertitur in si ;*  
*Urgeo ut ursi, mulgeo mulsi, fulgeo fulsi •*

*In deo sunt etiam quæ di dent, prandeo prandi,  
 Et vīdeo, sēdeo, assīdeo, sic strīdeo strīdi :  
 Quatuor in xi formantur, sic frīgeo frixi, 30  
 Augeo et auxi, lūceo lūgeo habent quoque luxi.  
 Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima,  
 Pendeo namque pēpendi, mordeo vultque mōmordi,  
 Spondeo sponsondi, vult tondeo habere tōtondi.  
 Passivi formam solam tria verba sequuntur, 35  
 Gaudeo gāvīsus, sōlītus sōleo, audeo et ausus.  
 Perfecto quin pauca carent, ut mōreo monstrat,  
 Atque āveo, atque hēbeo, scāteo, vēgeo, immīneoque ;  
 Atque aliæ voces, quas usus rite docebit.*

## III. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Tertia præteritum formabit ut hīc manifestum : 40  
 Bo fit psi, scribo ceu scripsi, sed bībo, lambo,  
 Et scābo, bi faciunt ; quin occumbo occūbui dat.  
 Co fit xi, ut dīco dixi, sed parco pēperci,  
 Et vinco vīci, vetus īco sic facit ici.  
 Sco fit vi, ut pasco pāvi ; attamen inde profectum 45  
 Compesco format compescui ; et adjice disco,  
 Quod dīdīci semper format, poscoque pōposci.  
 Simplicium formam verba inceptiva sequuntur,  
 Nam cāleo cālui format, cāluique cālesco.  
 Perfectum jactant nullum glisco atque fātisco, 50  
 Cum paucis aliis a nomine ritè profectis.  
 Do fit si, ut claudio clausi, cēdo geminans s  
 Dat cessi ; di pauca dabunt, ut scando, prehendo,  
 Accendo, cūdo, mando, dēfendo, ēdo, pando,  
 Et strīdo, sīdo ; findo et fundo abjiciunt n, 55  
 Inde fīdi, fūdi ; rarum dat rūdo rūdivi ;  
 Quinetiam paucis geminatur syllaba prima,  
 Pendo pēpendi, tendo tētendi, cædo cēcīdi,  
 Et cādo dat cēcīdi, tundo tūtūdi ; ultima vero  
 Plerumque in natis a do geminatur, ut ēdo, 60  
 Abdo, condo -dīdi, reddoque et cætera formant ;  
 Abscondo tamen abscondi formare videbis.*

*Passivi formam fīdo sum fīsus habebit.*

Go fit xi, ut jungo junxi; sed r ante go vult si,  
Ut spargo sparsi; lēgo lēgi, et āgo facit ēgi, 65

Et frango frēgi; pango pro fīgere panxi,  
(Inde tamen composta dabunt semper tibi -pēgi)  
Cūm cernis pēpīgi, est præsens plerumque paciscor.

Dat tango tētīgi, pūpūgi dabit ordine pungo,  
Sed punxi compōsta; curent perfecto ambīgo, vergo. 70  
Guo, ceu restinguo restinxi, xi tibi format.

Ho fit xi, traho quod traxi docet, et veho vexi.

Lo fit ui, cōlo ceu colui; psallo excipe psalli;

Excello legem sequitur, sed percūli habebit  
Percello; pēpūli dat pello, fallo fēfelli, 75  
Dat vello velli tibi sēpius, est ubi vulsi.

Mo fit mpsi, cōmo ceu compsi; at ēmo fucit ēmi;  
Deinde vōmoque frēmōque gēmōque trēmōque sequuntur,  
Quæ per ui perfecta dabunt, dabit et prēmō pressi.

No fit vi, sīno ceu sivi, quīn ordine cerno 80

Mutato crēvi; sic sperno; sternoque stravi,

Gigno, pōno, cāno, gēnui, pōsui, cēcīni dant;

Cujus ui compōsta, ut concīno concīnui, dant.

Po fit psi, ut sculpo sculpsi, carpo quoque carpsi;  
Sed rumpo semper rūpi, strēpui strepo format. 85

Quo fit xi, cōquo ceu coxi, linquo excipe liqui.

Ro fit si, sæpe s geminato, quod gēro monstrat,

Dans gessi; tēro dat trīvi, curroque cūcurri;

Quæro quæsīvi, neque enim fēro prætereatur,  
Quod tūli habet; sēro dat sēvi, compōsta sed ejus 90

Et -sevi et -sēruī dant, insēro, consēro, formā

Mutatā ad sensum, -sēruī sed dēsēro tantum,

Assēro item formant; nullum fūro præteritum dat.

So fit si, ut vīso visi, pinso adjice pinsi,

Pinsui item; depso quoque depsui; at omne dat -esso  
-essīvi, ut probat arcesso, incesso, atque lācesso. 96

To fit ti, ut verto verti; sic ordine verso,

Obstīti ab obsisto fluit, adde insisto, rēsisto;

Dat mitto mīsi, pēto vult formare pētīvi,

Sterto stertui habet, mēto messui: ab -ecto fit -exi, 100

*Ut flecto flexi ; necto dat nexui, habetque*  
*Nexi, sic pecto dat pexui, habet quoque pexi.*  
*Vo fit vi, ut volvo volvi, vivo excipe vixi.*  
*Xo xui habet, texo ut monstrat, quod texui habebit.*  
*Fit cio ci, ut făcio fēcī, jăcio quoque jēcī ;* 105  
*Allicio allexi, ělicio ělicui tibi format.*  
*Aspicio aspexi, sic conspicio, inspicioque.*  
*Fit dio di, ut fōdio fōdi ; gio, ceu fūgio, -gi.*  
*Fit pio pi, ut cāpio cēpi ; cūpio ecce cūpivi,*  
*Et rāpio rāpui, sāpio sāpui atque sāpivi.* 110  
*Dat pārio pēpēri ; dat concūtio concussi.*  
*Denique uo fit ui, ut stătuo stătui ; pluo plūvi*  
*Format, sive plui ; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.*  
*Compositum simplex sequitur ; sed syllaba semper*  
*Quam simplex geminat compōsto non geminatur.* 115

#### IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Quarta dat is ivi, ut monstrat scio scis tibi scīvi ;*  
*Excipias vĕnio dans vĕni, raucio rausi,*  
*Haurio item hausi, farcio farci, fulcio fulsi,*  
*Sarcio sarci, sentio sensi, sēpio sepsi,*  
*Sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi ; tum tria verba* 120  
*Formantur per ui ; sālĭo, apĕrio, opĕrioque,*  
*In ri compĕrio -rio mutat, repĕrioque,*  
*Perfectum prăbent fĕrio atque sŭperbio nullum.*

#### V. Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *E*.

*Verba hæc simplicia prăsentis prăteritique,*  
*Si componantur, vocalem primam in e mutant :* 125  
*Damno, lacto, săcro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fătiscor,*  
*Cando vetus, capto, jacto, pătior, grădiorque,*  
*Partio, carpo, pătro, scando, sic farcio, spargo.*

#### VI. Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *I*.

*Hæc hăbeo, lăteo, sālĭo, stătuo, cădo, lădo,*  
*Tango, căno, plăceo, tĕneo, sic cădo, cecīdi,* 130  
*Quăero, ěgeo, fătĕor, tăceo, săpio, răpioque,*



*Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant,  
Ut rāpio, erīpio ; sed verbi simplicis usum  
Hæc duo, complāceo cum perplāceo, benè servant.*

*Composita à verbis calco, salto, a per u mutant ; 135  
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, rēsulto.*

*Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a :  
Id docet, à claudio, occludo, excludo ; à quatioque,  
Percutio, excutio ; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata ;  
Plaudo au mutat in o, quod displōdo tibi monstrat. 140*

VII. Compound Verbs which change the Vowel of the Present Tense into I, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

*Hæc si componas, āgo, ěmo, sēdeo, rēgo, frango,  
Et cāpio, jācio, lācio, spēcio, prēmo, pango,  
Vocalem primam præsents in i sibi mutant,  
Præteriti nunquam ; ceu frango, rēfringo rēfrēgi ;  
A cāpio, incīpio incēpi. Sed pauca notentur ; 145  
Namque suum simplex pērāgo sequitur, sātāgoque ;  
Atque ab āgo, dēgo dat dēgi, cōgō coēgi ;  
A rēgo, sic pergo perrexī ; vult quoque surgo  
Surrexi ; mediā præsents syllabā ademptā.*

*Composita à pango retinent a quatuor ista : 150  
Dēpango, oppango, circumpango, atque rēpango.*

*Nil variat fācio, nisi præposito præeunte :  
Id docet olfācio, cum calfācio, infīcioque.*

*A lēgo nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte,  
Præsents servant vocalem ; in i cætera mutant ; 155  
De quibus hæc, intelligo, dilīgo, negligo, tantum  
Præteritum lexi faciunt ; reliqua omnia legi.*

### VIII. Of the Supines of simple Verbs.

*Nunc ex præterito discas formare supinum.  
Perfectum unum in bi, bibitum formare bibi vult.*

*Ci fit ctum, ut vīci victum testatur, et īci 150  
Dans ictum, fēci factum, jēci quoque jactum.*

*Di fit sum, ut vīdi vīsum : quædam geminant s ;  
Ut pandi passum, sēdi sessum, adde scīdi, quod  
Dat scissum, atque fīdi fissum, fōdi quoque fossum.*

*Syllaba non ullis geminatur prima supinis ;* 165

*Idque tōtondi dans tonsūm docet, atque cecīdi*

*Quod cæsum, et cecīdi quod dat casum, atque tētendi*

*Quod tensum et tentum, tūtūdi tunsum, atque dēdi quod*

*Jure dātum poscit ; sic quot nascuntur ab illo,*

*Addīdi ut addītum habet ; morsum vult atque momordi.*

*Gi fit etum, ut lēgi lectum, pēgi pēpīgique* 171

*Dant pactum, frēgi fractum, tētīgi quoque tactum,*

*Egi actum, pūpūgi punctum ; fūgi fūgītum dat.*

*Li fit sum, ut pēpūli pulsum, sic rite fēfelli*

*Falsum ; percūli habet perculsum ; neve tūli te* 175

*Aufugiat, semper cui lātum venit in usum.*

*Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum sumunt, velut hīc manifestum ;*

*Emi emptum, vēni ventum, cēcīni à cāno cantum,*

*A cāpio cēpi captum, cēpi quoque cēptum ;*

*A rumpo rūpi ruptum, līqui quoque lictum.* 180

*Ri fit sum, ut verri versum ; pēpēri excipe partum.*

*Si fit sum, ut vīsi visum ; quin ss geminato,*

*Mīsi formabit missum, fulsi excipe fultum,*

*Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi quoque fartum,*

*Ussi ustum, gessi gestum ; torsi sibi tortum* 185

*Vindicat ; indulsi sic indultum tibi format.*

*Psi fit ptum, ut scripsi scriptum ; sculpsi quoque sculptum.*

*Ti vult sum, ut verti versum, formare ; supinum*

*Cūm stīti habet, stātum erit, sed vix reperire valebis.*

*Vi fit tum, ut flāvi flātum ; pāvi excipe pastum :* 190

*Dat lāvi lōtum, interdum lautum atque lāvātum,*

*Pōtāvi pōtum, vēnīvi à vēnēō vēnum ;*

*Dat fāvi fautum, cāvi cautum : à sērō sēvi*

*Formes rite sātum, sēpēlīvi discite sēpultum,*

*Et singultivi singultum semper habebit :* 195

*Solvi à solvo sōlūtum, volvi à volvo vōlūtum.*

*Quod dat ui dat itum, ut dōmui dōmītum : excipe quodvis*

*Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in ūtum ;*

*Exui ut exūtum : à ruo deme rui ruītum dans :*

*Vult sēcui sectum, nēcui nectum, frīcuīque* 200

*Frictum, miscui item mistum, dōcui quoque doctum,*

Torruī *habet* tostum, contentum cōtinuīque;  
*Adjice* consūlui consultum, ālui altum ālitumque;  
 Sic sālui saltum, cōlui occūlui quoque cultum;  
 Pinsui *habet* pistum, rāpui raptum, sēruīque 205  
 4 sēro *vult* sertum; sic texui *habet* quoque textum.  
 Censui *habet* censum, messum quoque messui *habebit*,  
 Nexui *item* nexum, sic pexui *habet* quoque pexum.  
 Xi *fit* ctum, ut vinxi vinctum: *quædam abjiciunt* n:  
 Ut finxi fictum *semper dabit*, *adjice* pinxi 216  
 Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi quoque rictum:  
 Xum, flexi, plexi, fixi, *dant*; et fluo fluxum.

### IX. Of the Supines of Compound Verbs.

*Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,*  
*Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.*  
*Composita à* tunsum, *demptā* n, tusum: *à* ruitum *fit*.  
 I *mediā demptā* rūtum; et *à* saltum quoque sultum; 216  
 A sero, quando sātum *format*, *composita sītum dant*.  
*Hæc* captum, factum, jactum, raptum, *a per e mutant*;  
 Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, *adjice* fartum.  
 A nosco tantum duo cognītum et agnītum *habentur*; 220  
*Cætera dant* nōtum: nullo est jam noscītum in usu.

### X. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in Or.

*Verba in or admittunt ex posteriore supino*  
*Præteritum, verso u per us, et sum consociato*  
*Vel fui; ut à lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum*  
*Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum:* 225  
*Nam* lābor lapsus; pātior *dat* passus, et ejus  
 Natum perpētior perpassus; *dat* fāteorque  
 Fassus, confīteor confessus; *dat* grādiorque  
 Gressus, *dat* mensus sum mētior, ūtor et ūsus.  
 Pro texo ordītus, pro incepto *habet* ordior orsus, 230  
 ! ūtor nīsus vel nixus sum, ulciscor et ultus,  
 Irascor simul iratus, reor atque rātus sum,  
 Oblīviscor *vult* oblītus sum, fruor optat  
 Fructus vel frūitus: mīserēri iunge mīsertus.

*Atque -itus ; à tuor et tueor tūtus tuītusque ; 235*  
*A lōquor adde lōcūtus, et à sēquor adde secūtus.*

*Expērior facit expertus ; formare pāciscor*  
*Gaudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus, āpiscor,*  
*Quod vetus est verbum, aptus sum ; unde ādīpiscor*  
*ādeptus.*

*Junge quēror questus, prōficiscor jūnge prōfectus, 246*  
*Expērgiscor sum expērectus ; et hęc quoque, commi-*  
*niscor commentus, nascor nātus, mōriorque*  
*Mortuus, atque ōrior, quod præteritum facit ortus.*  
*Perfecto mēdeor, vescor, liquorque carebunt,*  
*Sic quoque diffiteor, sic ringor, sic rēmīniscor. 245*

# XI. Of Verbs which make the Preterperfect Tense both in the Active and Passive Voice.

*Præteritum activæ et passivæ vocis habent hęc :*  
*Nūbo nupsi nuptaque sum ; plāceo plācui dat*  
*Et plācītus ; libet et libuit libītum ; licet adde,*  
*Quod licuit licītum ; tædet, quod tædui, et dat*  
*Pertæsum ; adde pūdet, faciens pūduit pūditumque ;*  
*Atque pīget, tibi quod format pīguit pīgītumque. 251*

## XII. Verbs which seldom admit a Supine.

*Hęc rarò aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum :*  
*Lambo, mīco micui, rūdo, scābo, parco pēperci,*  
*Dispesco, posco, compesco, atque adjice disco : 255*  
*Dēgo, angō, sūgo, lingo, ningo, sātāgoque,*  
*Psallo, vōlo, nōlo, mālo, trēmō, strīdeo, strīdo,*  
*Flāveo, līveo, āvet, pāvèō, connīveo, fervet :*  
*A nuo compositum, ut renuo : à cādo, ut accīdo ; præter*  
*Occīdo, quod facit occāsum, rēcīdoque rēcāsum :*  
*Respuo, sic mētuo, luo, frīgeo, calveo, sterto, 260*  
*Sic etiam tīmeo : sic lūceo, et arceo, cujus*  
*Composita -ercītum habent : sic a gruo, ut ingruo, nata ;*  
*Et quæcunque in uī formantur neutra secundæ :*  
*Excipias ōleo, dōleo, plāceo, tāceoque,*  
*Pāreo, ūtem cāreo, nōceo, jāceo, lāteoque, 265*  
*Et vāleo, cāleo ; gaudent hęc namque supino.*

# SYNTAXIS:

OR,

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

---

### CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

#### *Nominativus et Verbum.*

1. VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ : ut,

*Ego loquor.*

*Homines audiunt.*

2. Nominativus pronominum omittitur, nisi distinctionis aut emphasis gratiâ : ut,

*Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis. Cic.*

*Auditis, an me ludit amabilis*

*Insania ? Audire et videor pios*

*Errare per lucos. Hor.*

*Possunt quia posse videntur. Virg.*

3. Aliquando verbum infinitivi modi usurpatur pro nominativo vel pro accusativo casu nominis : ut,

*Ingenuas didicisse fuleliter artes*

*Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros. Ovid.*

*Quod crimen dicis, præter amâsse, meum ? Ovid.*

4. Cùm duo sunt nomina diversarum personarum, verbum cum personâ digniore concordat :\* ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero valemus. Cic.*

5. Cùm duo aut plura nomina singularis numeri unum verbum sequitur, plerumque in plurali ponitur, si

---

\* Apud Latinos prima persona dignissima est, et genus masculinum.

de *animantibus* agitur ; si de *rebus*, vel in plurali vel in singulari : ut,

*Apud Regillum Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt.* Cic.

*Cum tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est.* Cic.

*Beneficium et gratia homines inter se conjungunt.* Cic.

6. Cum nomen singularis numeri multitudinem indicat, verbo plurali sæpe jungitur : ut,

*Atria turba tenent, veniunt leve vulgus, euntque.* Ov.

*Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt.* Cæs.

(a) Sic et adverbium *partim* cum genitivo plurali nominis, ceu nomen ipsum, aliquando usurpatur : ut,

*Partim eorum timidi sunt, partim à republicâ aversi.* Cic.

*Partim eorum ficta aperte, partim temere effutita sunt.* Cic.

7. Verbum inter duos nominativos ejusdem personæ sed diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest, sed cum posteriore ferè concordat : ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.* Ter.

*Pectus quoque robora fiunt.* Ovid.

*Omnia pontus erant.* Ovid.

8. Verba dicendi, audiendi, sciendi, putandi, et similia, et verbum *sum* pro nominativo accusativus sequitur, verbo sequente infinitivo : ut,

*Audivit nos venire.* Cic.

*Scribit confectum esse bellum.* Cic.

*Fama est, Enceladum urgeri mole hâc.* Virg.

(a) Verba sperandi et promittendi infinitivus modus futuri temporis plerumque sequitur : ut,

*Hæc promitto me esse observaturum.* Cic.

*Spero fore ut contingat id nobis.* Cic.

## CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

### *Substantivum et Adjectivum.*

9. Adjectiva, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo genere, numero, et casu concordant : ut,

*Rara avis in terris nigroque simillima cygno.* Juv.

10. Cùm verbum infinitivi modi, aut sententiæ pars pro substantivo usurpatur, neutrius generis habetur : ut,  
*Humanum est irusci.*

11. Cùm plura sunt substantiva diversorum generum, adjectivum cum digniore genere concordat, si de *animantibus* agitur, et si in numero plurali ponitur : ut,  
*Jam pridem pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

12. Si vero de *rebus* agitur, adjectivum sæpè in neutro genere ponitur : ut,  
*Secundæ res, honores, imperia, victoriæ, fortuita sunt.*  
Cic.

(a) Interdum adjectivum cum proximo substantivo concordat, cujuscunque generis sit, præsertim cùm in singulari numero ponitur : ut,  
*Animus, et consilium, et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus.* Cic.

13. Adjectivum aliquando concordat cum substantivo quod significatur, non cum eo quod exprimitur : ut,  
*Thracum auxilia, (i. e. Thraces auxiliantes) cum paræ (i. e. aliqui ex iis) munitionibus adjacerent, cæsi sunt.*  
Tac.

14. Aliquando nullum substantivum exprimitur, sed adjectivum pro substantivo usurpatur : ut,  
*Mira loquor.* Ovid.  
*Multi pro patriâ mortem libenter oppetierunt.* Cic.

## CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

### *Relativum et Antecedens.*

15. Relativum cum antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ : ut,  
*Ego sum ille consul qui Romam servavi.*  
*Contemnimus hominem qui amat mendacia.*

16. Quoniam relativum adjectivum est, easdem de ære leges quas adjectivum sequitur : ut,

*Eæ fruges atque fructus quos terra gignit.* Cic.

*Duo importuna prodigia* (i. e. *viri prodigiosi sceleris*) *quos improbitas tribuno plebis constrictos addixerat.* Cic.

*Ubi est illud scelus qui me perdidit?* Ter.

17. Aliquando sententia aut pars sententiæ ponitur pro antecedente: ut,

*In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.* Ter.

18. Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, sæpè cum posteriore concordat: ut,

*Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur.* Cic.

(a) Relativum sæpe ponitur Latine, ubi in nostro sermone pronomine cum conjunctione utimur: ut,

*Hoc si scïsses, pater, cujus* (i. e. *ejus enim, vel tantæ enim*) *pietatis es, nemo te antecessisset.* Quint.

*Et tamen in cælo, quæ* (i. e. *tanta enim*) *jam patientia nostra est,*

*Spernimur.* Ovid.

*Pater tuus si viveret, quâ severitate* (i. e. *tantâ enim*) *fuit, tu profecto non viveres.* Cic.

*Hoc jussit, quod* (i. e. *sed illud*) *si fecissem, omnia perdidissem.*

19. Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur: ut,

*Vestrâ, qui cum summâ integritate vixistis, hoc maxime interest.* Cic.

(a) Relativum, cùm ad nomen multitudinis refertur, aliquando in plurali ponitur: ut,

*Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.* Cæs.

20. Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur à verbo aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

*Te peto quem merui.* Ovid.

*Cujus numen adoro.*



(a) Cùm relativum superlativo adjungitur, superlativum in eodem sententiæ membro quo relativum ponitur: ut,  
*Themistocles servum quem fidelissimum habuit ad Xerzem misit.* Cor. Nep.

## NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### SUBSTANTIVA.

21. Duo substantiva rei ejusdem in eodem casu ponuntur: ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.* Ovid.

22. Quum duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

*Crescit amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crescit.* Juv.

23. Adjectivum in neutro genere pro substantivo positum, genitivum postulat: ut,

*Hoc ad te literarum dedi.* Cic.

*Ad ultimum inopiæ venerant.* Liv.

*Ferimur per opaca locorum.* Virg.

24. Ponitur interdum genitivus tantum, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito: ut,

*Ventum erat ad Vestæ,* (i. e. *ad templum Vestæ.*) Hor.

*Hasdrubal Gisgonis,* (i. e. *Gisgonis filius.*) Liv.

25. Substantivum qualitatem denotans, adjuncto adjectivo, in genitivo vel in ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Titus facilitatis tantæ fuit, ut nemini quicquam negaret.*

Eutr.

*Agesilaus staturâ fuit humili et corpore exiguo.*

Corn. Nep.

(a) Substantiva à verbis derivata interdum eosdem casus post se admittunt, quos verba à quibus derivantur exigunt: ut,

*Domum reditionis spe sublatâ.* Cæs.

*Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus.* Cic.

26. Opus et usus ablativum rei, cum dativo personæ, exigunt: ut,

*Auctoritas nobis opus est.* Cic.

*Pecuniam quâ nihil sibi esset usus ab iis non accepit.*  
Gell.

(a) *Opus* autem adjective, pro *necessarius*, aliquando poni videtur: ut,

*Dux nobis et auctor opus est.* Cic.

## ADJECTIVA.

### *Genitivus post Adjectivum.*

27. Adjectiva, vel participia pro adjectivis posita, quæ cupidinem, scientiam, memoriam, timorem, diligentiam, participationem, atque iis contraria, significant, cum plurimis aliis quæ qualitatem vel motum aliquem animi denotant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Pythagoras sapientiæ studiosos appellavit philosophos.*  
Cic.

*Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet.* Ovid.

*Venturæ memores jam nunc estote senectæ.* Ovid.

*Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futuræ.* Virg.

*Romani appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras gentes fuerunt.* Cic.

*Serpit humi tutus nimium timidusque procellæ.* Hor.

*Vir omnis officii diligentissimus.* Cic.

*Cæteræ habere domi fortunarum omnium participem possunt.* Cic.

*Sæpe potens voti redit anus.* Ovid.

(a) Ex his *particeps* interdum dativo personæ jungitur: ut,  
*Mater in plerisque ruris operibus marito particeps.* Quint.

(b) *Conscius* genitivum rei, dativum personæ, postulat; interdum etiam dativo rei jungitur, personâ subauditâ: ut,  
*Conscius sibi tanti sceleris.* Sall.

*Huic facinori tanto (i. e. illi quæ hoc facinus admiserit) mens tua conscia esse non debuit.* Cic.

28. Adjectiva quæ copiam egestatemve significant, genitivum, interdum etiam ablativum, exigunt: ut,

*Dives equum, dives pictæ vestis et auri.* Virg.

*Dives agris, dives positus in fœnore nummis.* Hor.

*Opis non indiga nostræ.* Virg.  
*Plena errorum sunt omnia.* Cic.  
*Utriusque harum rerum humanus animus est expers*  
 Cic

29. Adjectiva quæ liberalitatem vel contrarium significant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Liberalis pecuniæ.* Sall.  
*Veteris non parvus aceti.* Hor.

30. *Proprius, superstes, communis*, cum paucis aliis, genitivum, interdum etiam dativum, admittunt: ut,

*Populi Romani propria est libertas.*  
*Aliorum superstites sumus.* Tac.  
*Hoc commune est potentiæ cupidorum cum otiosis.* Cic.  
*Omni ætati mors est communis.*  
*Pomponius Tiberio superstes fuit.* Tac.

(a.) *Communis* verò pronomini personali nunquam nisi in dativo jungitur: ut,

*Hoc mihi tecum commune est.*

31. *A alienus* genitivo, vel dativo, vel ablativo, vel ablativo cum præpositione, jungitur: ut,

*Hoc alienum esse suæ dignitatis censet.* Cic.  
*A alienus ambitioni.* Sen.  
*Fraus homine alienissima est.* Cic.  
*Non alienus à Scævola studiis.* Cic.

32. Adjectiva quæ crimen vel contrarium significant, genitivo junguntur: ut,

*Regulus collegam, ut noxium conjurationis, ad disquisitionem trahebat.* Tac.  
*Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus.* Hor.

33. Adjectiva verbalia in *ax* genitivum exigunt: ut,  
*Tempus edax rerum.*

34. Adjectiva partitiva, numeralia, comparativa et superlativa, et adjectiva partitivè posita, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Utrum horum mavis accipe.*  
*Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.*

*Manuum fortior est dextra.*

*Digitorum medius est longissimus.*

*Sequimur te, sancte Deorum.* Virg.

(a) Usurpantur et cum his præpositionibus, *de, ex, in, inter* :  
ut,

*Nam Deus è vobis alter es, alter eris.* Ovid.

*Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.* Cic.

*Solus de superis qui tua terga vides.* Ovid.

*Inter mille rates tua sit millesima puppis.* Ovid.

### *Dativus post Adjectivum.*

35. Adjectiva, quibus commodum, similitudo, aut iis similia vel contraria, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

*Si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.* Juv.

*Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.* Mart.

*Patri similis.* Cic.

*Virtus fructuosa aliis, ipsi laboriosa.* Cic.

*Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo.* Ovid

*Socrates iudiciis non supplex fuit.* Cic.

*Dîs carus ipsis.* Hor.

*Est finitimus oratori poeta.*

(a) Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, et adjectivum *affinis*, etiam genitivo junguntur: ut,

*Qui mortem leviolem faciunt, somni simillimam volunt esse.* Cic.

*Affinis hujus culpæ.* Cic.

36. *Natus, habilis, commodus, utilis, aptus*, cum quibusdam aliis, etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur: ut,

*Natus ad gloriam.* Cic.

*Utilis ad eam rem.*

37. Adjectiva verbalia in *bilis*, accepta passivè, dativum postulant: ut,

*Nulli penetrabilis astro*

*Lucus iners.* Stat.

38. Participia passivæ vocis dativum, vel ablativum cum præpositione, postulant: ut,

*Primâ dicte mihi, summâ dicende Camœnâ,*

*Mæcenâs. Hor.*

*Senex sapiens ab Apolline dictus.*

*Accusativus post Adjectivum.*

39. Adjectiva magnitudinem significantia, accusativum exigunt: ut,

*Fossa undecim pedes lata. Cic.*

40. *Natus*, cùm ad temporis durationem refertur, accusativum exigit: ut,

*Underiginti annos natus. Cic.*

41. Accusativus a poetis sæpe subjicitur adjectivis et participiis passivæ vocis, præsertim cùm pars affecta indicatur: ut,

*Os humerosque Deo similis. Virg.*

*[Flores] inscripti nomina regum. Virg.*

*Stratus nunc viridi membra sub arbuto. Hor.*

42. Accusativus sæpe in exclamationibus usurpatur, interjectione aliquâ, a quâ reverà regitur, subauditâ: ut,

*Me cæcum* (i. e. *O me cæcum*) *qui hæc ante non viderim! Cic. [Vide infra, Reg. 154.]*

*Ablativus post Adjectivum.*

43. Adjectiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, aut formam, aut modum rei: ut,

*Scelere par est illi, industriâ inferior. Cic.*

*Trojanus origine Cæsar. Virg.*

44. *Dignus, indignus, præditus, contentus, extorris, fretus*, cum adjectivis pretium significantibus, ablativum exigunt: ut,

*Dignus es odio. Ter.*

*Mens est prædita motu sempiterno. Cic.*

*Sorte tuâ contentus abi.*

*Extorris agro Romano. Sall.*

*Otium gemmis venale nec auro.*

*Quod non opus est, asse carum est.* Sen.

(a.) Horum nonnulla poeticè interdum genitivum admittunt : ut,

*Magnorum indignus avorum.* Virg.

(b.) *Fretus* interdum, sed raro, dativo jungitur : ut,

*Multitudo hostium nulli rei præterquam numero freta fuit.* Liv.

45. *Natus, satus, cretus*, et similia sine præpositione ; *ortus, editus*, vel cum vel sine præpositione ; ablativum exi<sup>ar. c. u.</sup> ;

*Nate Deâ.* Virg.

*Sate sanguine Divûm.* Virg.

*Hortamur fari quo sanguine cretus.* Virg.

*Anchisâ generate, Deâm certissima proles.* Virg.

*Venus, orta mari, mare præstat eunti.* Ovid.

*Te contenta marito,*

*Edita de magno flumine nympha fui.* Ovid.

46. Comparativis subjicitur ablativus rei ad quam comparatio fiat, vel utraque res comparata in eodem casu ponitur, interpositâ conjunctione *quàm* : ut,

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* Hor.

*Melior tutiorque est certa pax, quàm sperata victoria.* Liv.

(a.) Cùm duo adjectiva vel adverbia inter se comparantur, et per *quàm* conjunguntur, in comparativo ambo ferè ponuntur : ut,

*Publii Æmilii concio fuit verior quàm gratior populo.* Liv.

*Non timeo ne libentius hæc in illum evomere videar quàm verius.* Cic.

(b.) Post *minus, plus, amplius, et longius, quàm* interdum omittitur, nihilominus substantivum quod sequitur non in ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Si vos minus hodie decem plebis tribunos feceritis.* Liv.

*Cùm plus annum æger fuisset.* Liv.

*Dixit Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hybernis suis abfuisse.* Cæs.

(c.) Aliquando subjiciuntur comparativis *quàm pro eam* substantivo, *quàm qui* vel *quàm ut* cum verbo : ut,

*Prælium atrocius quàm pro numero pugnantium editur.*  
Liv.

*Major sum quàm cui possit fortuna nocere.* Ovid.  
*Flumen latius erat quàm ut tranare possent.*

## PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

47. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, genitivi primitivorum, ponuntur cùm persona significatur: ut,

*Languet desiderio tui.*

*Parsque tui lateat corpore clausa meo.* Ov.

*Imago nostri.*

48. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, ponuntur cùm actio vel possessio rei significatur: ut,

*Favet desiderio tuo.*

*Imago nostra*, (i. e. *quam nos possidemus*.)

49. Pronomina possessiva hos genitivos post se interdum recipiunt, *ipsius, solius, unius, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

*Dixi meâ unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam.* Cic.

*Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.*

*Cùm mea nemo*

*Scripta legat, vulgo recitare timentis.* Hor.

*De tuo ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis.* Cic.

*In suâ cujusque laude præstantior.*

*Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.*

*Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus.* Cic.

50. *Sui et suus* reciproca sunt, id est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit: ut,

*Sentit animus se vi suâ non alienâ moveri.* Cic.

*Oravit me pater, ut ad se venirem.* Cic.

51. Hæc demonstrativa, *hic, iste, ille, is*, fere sic distinguuntur; *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat; *iste*, eum qui apud te est; *ille*, eum qui ab utroque remotus est; *is*, eum de quo mentio fit.

52. Quum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius, refertur: ut,

*Cæsar munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato: Ille mansuetudine clarus factus; huic severitas dignitatem addiderat.* Sall.

(a.) Nonnunquam vero hic et ille mutatas vices habent: ut, *Melior tutiorque est certa pax quàm sperata victoria; hæc in tuâ, illa in Deorum potestate est.* Liv.

53. *Idem copulativam vim sæpe habet: ut, Nil liberale est quod non idem justum.* Cic.

*Operam in res obscuras conferunt, easdemque non necessarias.* Cic.

## VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### *Nominativus post Verbum.*

54. Verba substantiva, ut *sum, fio, existo*; verba vocandi passiva, ut *nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor*, et iis similia, ut *videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eosdem casus habent: ut,

*Deus est mundi Creator.*

*Natura beatis*

*Omnibus esse dedit.*

*Ex nitido fit rusticus.* Hor.

*Opiferque per orbem*

*Dicor.* Ovid.

*Da mihi fallere, da justo sanctoque videri.* Hor.

(a.) Item omnia ferè verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum nominativo verbi casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,

*Pii orant taciti.*

*Malus pastor dormit supinus.*

### *Genitivus post Verbum.*

55. *Sum* et *fio* genitivum postulant, quoties significant possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: ut,

*Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.* Cic.

*Thebæ populi Romani belli jure factæ sunt.* Liv.



*Rara avis in terris nigroque simillima cygno.* Juv.

10. Cùm verbum infinitivi modi, aut sententiæ pars pro substantivo usurpatur, neutrius generis habetur : ut,  
*Humanum est irusci.*

11. Cùm plura sunt substantiva diversorum generum, adjectivum cum digniore genere concordat, si de *animantibus* agitur, et si in numero plurali ponitur : ut,  
*Jam pridem pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

12. Si vero de *rebus* agitur, adjectivum sæpè in neutro genere ponitur : ut,

*Secundæ res, honores, imperia, victoriæ, fortuita sunt.*  
Cic.

(a) Interdum adjectivum cum proximo substantivo concordat, cujuscunque generis sit, præsertim cùm in singulari numero ponitur : ut,

*Animus, et consilium, et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus.* Cic.

13. Adjectivum aliquando concordat cum substantivo quod significatur, non cum eo quod exprimitur : ut,

*Thracum auxilia, (i. e. Thraces auxiliantes) cum pars (i. e. aliqui ex iis) munitionibus adjacerent, cæsi sunt.*  
Tac.

14. Aliquando nullum substantivum exprimitur, sed adjectivum pro substantivo usurpatur : ut,

*Mira loquor.* Ovid.

*Multi pro patriâ mortem libenter oppetierunt.* Cic.

## CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

### *Relativum et Antecedens.*

15. Relativum cum antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ : ut,

*Ego sum ille consul qui Romam servavi.*

*Contemnimus hominem qui amat mendacia.*

16. Quoniam relativum adjectivum est, easdem de ære leges quas adjectivum sequitur : ut,

*Eæ fruges atque fructus quos terra gignit.* Cic.

*Duo importuna prodigia* (i. e. *virii prodigiosi sceleris*) *quos improbitas tribuno plebis constrictos addixerat.* Cic.

*Ubi est illud scelus qui me perdidit?* Ter.

17. Aliquando sententia aut pars sententiæ ponitur pro antecedente : ut,

*In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.* Ter.

18. Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, sæpè cum posteriore concordat : ut,

*Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur.* Cic.

(a) Relativum sæpe ponitur Latine, ubi in nostro sermone pronomine cum conjunctione utimur : ut,

*Hoc si scïsses, pater, cujus* (i. e. *ejus enim, vel tantæ enim*) *pietatis es, nemo te antecessisset.* Quint.

*Et tamen in cælo, quæ* (i. e. *tanta enim*) *jam patientia nostra est,*

*Spernimur.* Ovid.

*Pater tuus si viveret, quâ severitate* (i. e. *tantâ enim*) *fuit, tu profecto non viveres.* Cic.

*Hoc jussit, quod* (i. e. *sed illud*) *si fecissem, omnia perdissem.*

19. Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur : ut,

*Vestrâ, qui cum summâ integritate vixistis, hoc maxime interest.* Cic.

(a) Relativum, cùm ad nomen multitudinis refertur, aliquando in plurali ponitur : ut,

*Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.* Cæs.

20. Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur à verbo aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur : ut,

*Te peto quem merui.* Ovid.

*Cujus numen adoro.*

(a) Cùm relativum superlativo adjungitur, superlativum in eodem sententiæ membro quo relativum ponitur : ut,

*Themistocles servum quem fidelissimum habuit ad Xeræm misit.* Cor. Nep.

## NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### SUBSTANTIVA.

21. Duo substantiva rei ejusdem in eodem casu ponuntur : ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.* Ovid.

22. Quum duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur : ut,

*Crescit amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crescit.* Juv.

23. Adjectivum in neutro genere pro substantivo positum, genitivum postulat : ut,

*Hoc ad te literarum dedi.* Cic.

*Ad ultimum inopiæ venerant.* Liv.

*Ferimur per opaca locorum.* Virg.

24. Ponitur interdum genitivus tantùm, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito : ut,

*Ventum erat ad Vestæ,* (i. e. *ad templum Vestæ.*) Hor.

*Hasdrubal Gisgonis,* (i. e. *Gisgonis filius.*) Liv.

25. Substantivum qualitatem denotans, adjuncto adjectivo, in genitivo vel in ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Titus facilitatis tantæ fuit, ut nemini quicquam negaret.*

Eutr.

*Agésilæus staturâ fuit humili et corpore exiguo.*

Corn. Nep.

(a) Substantiva à verbis derivata interdum eosdem casus post se admittunt, quos verba à quibus derivantur exigunt : ut,

*Domum reditionis spe sublatâ.* Cæs.

*Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus.* Cic.

26. Opus et usus ablativum rei, cum dativo personæ, exigunt : ut,

*Auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est.* Cic.

*Pecuniam quâ nihil sibi esset usus ab iis non accepit.*  
Gell.

(a) *Opus* autem adjective, pro *necessarius*, aliquando poni videtur: ut,

*Dux nobis et auctor opus est.* Cic.

## ADJECTIVA.

### Genitivus post Adjectivum.

27. Adjectiva, vel participia pro adjectivis posita, quæ cupidinem, scientiam, memoriam, timorem, diligentiam, participationem, atque iis contraria, significant, cum plurimis aliis quæ qualitatem vel motum aliquem animi denotant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Pythagoras sapientiæ studiosos appellavit philosophos.*  
Cic.

*Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet.* Ovid.

*Venturæ memores jam nunc estote senectæ.* Ovid.

*Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futuræ.* Virg.

*Romani appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras gentes fuerunt.* Cic.

*Serpit humi tutus nimium timidusque procellæ.* Hor.

*Vir omnis officii diligentissimus.* Cic.

*Cæteræ habere domi fortunarum omnium participem possunt.* Cic.

*Sæpe potens voti reddit anus.* Ovid.

(a) Ex his *particeps* interdum dativo personæ jungitur: ut,  
*Mater in plerisque ruris operibus marito particeps.* Quint.

(b) *Conscius* genitivum rei, dativum personæ, postulat; interdum etiam dativo rei jungitur, personâ subauditâ: ut,  
*Conscius sibi tanti sceleris.* Sall.

*Huic facinori tanto (i. e. illi quæ hoc facinus admiserit) mens tua conscia esse non debuit.* Cic.

28. Adjectiva quæ copiam egestatemve significant, genitivum, interdum etiam ablativum, exigunt: ut,

*Dives equum, dives pictæ vestis et auri.* Virg.

*Dives agris, dives positis in fœnore nummis.* Hor.

*Opis non indiga nostræ.* Virg.  
*Plena errorum sunt omnia.* Cic.  
*Utriusque harum rerum humanus animus est expers*  
 Cic

29. Adjectiva quæ liberalitatem vel contrarium significant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Liberalis pecuniæ.* Sall.  
*Veteris non parcus aceti.* Hor.

30. *Proprius, superstes, communis*, cum paucis aliis, genitivum, interdum etiam dativum, admittunt: ut,

*Populi Romani propria est libertas.*  
*Aliorum superstites sumus.* Tac.  
*Hoc commune est potentiæ cupidorum cum otiosis.* Cic.  
*Omni ætati mors est communis.*  
*Pomponius Tiberio superstes fuit.* Tac.

(a.) *Communis* verò pronomini personali nunquam nisi in dativo jungitur: ut,

*Hoc mihi tecum commune est.*

31. *Alienus* genitivo, vel dativo, vel ablativo, vel ablativo cum præpositione, jungitur: ut,

*Hoc alienum esse suæ dignitatis censet.* Cic.  
*Alienus ambitioni.* Sen.  
*Fraus homine alienissima est.* Cic.  
*Non alienus à Scævolæ studiis.* Cic.

32. Adjectiva quæ crimen vel contrarium significant, genitivo junguntur: ut,

*Regulus collegam, ut noxium conjurationis, ad disquisitionem trahebat.* Tac.  
*Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus.* Hor.

33. Adjectiva verbalia in *ax* genitivum exigunt: ut,  
*Tempus edax rerum.*

34. Adjectiva partitiva, numeralia, comparativa et superlativa, et adjectiva partitivè posita, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Utrum horum mavis accipe.*  
*Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.*

*Manuum fortior est dextra.*

*Digitorum medius est longissimus.*

*Sequimur te, sancte Deorum.* Virg.

(a) Usurpantur et cum his præpositionibus, *de, ex, in, inter* :  
ut,

*Nam Deus è vobis alter es, alter eris.* Ovid.

*Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.* Cic.

*Solus de superis qui tua terga vides.* Ovid.

*Inter mille rates tua sit millesima puppis.* Ovid.

### *Dativus post Adjectivum.*

35. Adjectiva, quibus commodum, similitudo, aut iis similia vel contraria, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant : ut,

*Si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.* Juv.

*Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.* Mart.

*Patri similis.* Cic.

*Virtus fructuosa aliis, ipsi laboriosa.* Cic.

*Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo.* Ovid

*Socrates iudiciis non supplex fuit.* Cic.

*Dīs carus ipsis.* Hor.

*Est finitimus oratori poeta.*

(a) Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, et adjectivum *affinis*, etiam genitivo junguntur : ut,

*Qui mortem leviores faciunt, somni simillimam volunt esse.* Cic.

*Affinis hujus culpæ.* Cic.

36. *Natus, habilis, commodus, utilis, aptus*, cum quibusdam aliis, etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur : ut,

*Natus ad gloriam.* Cic.

*Utilis ad eam rem.*

37. Adjectiva verbalia in *bilis*, accepta passivè, dativum postulant : ut,

*Nulli penetrabilis astro*

*Lucus iners.* Stat.

38. Participia passivæ vocis dativum, vel ablativum cum præpositione, postulant : ut,

*Primâ dicte mihi, summâ dicende Camenâ,*

*Mæcenâs. Hor.*

*Senex sapiens ab Apolline dictus.*

*Accusativus post Adjectivum.*

39. Adjectiva magnitudinem significantia, accusativum exigunt : ut,

*Fossa undecim pedes lata. Cic.*

40. *Natus*, cùm ad temporis durationem refertur, accusativum exigit : ut,

*Undeviginti annos natus. Cic.*

41. Accusativus a poetis sæpe subjicitur adjectivis et participiis passivæ vocis, præsertim cùm pars affecta indicatur : ut,

*Os humerosque Deo similis. Virg.*

*[Flores] inscripti nomina regum. Virg.*

*Stratus nunc viridi membra sub arbuto. Hor.*

42. Accusativus sæpe in exclamationibus usurpatur, interjectione aliquâ, a quâ reverà regitur, subauditâ : ut,

*Me cæcum* (i. e. *O me cæcum*) *qui hæc ante non viderim ! Cic. [Vide infra, Reg. 154.]*

*Ablativus post Adjectivum.*

43. Adjectiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, aut formam, aut modum rei : ut,

*Scelere par est illi, industriâ inferior. Cic.*

*Trojanus origine Cæsar. Virg.*

44. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *contentus*, *extorris*, *fretus*, cum adjectivis pretium significantibus, ablativum exigunt : ut,

*Dignus es odio. Ter.*

*Mens est prædita motu sempiterno. Cic.*

*Sorte tuâ contentus abi.*

*Extorris agro Romano. Sall.*

*Otium gemmis venale nec auro.*

*Quod non opus est, asse carum est.* Sen.

(a.) Horum nonnulla poeticè interdum genitivum admittunt : ut,

*Magnorum indignus avorum.* Virg.

(b.) *Fretus* interdum, sed raro, dativo jungitur : ut,

*Multitudo hostium nulli rei præterquam numero freta fuit.* Liv.

45. *Natus, satus, cretus*, et similia sine præpositione ; *ortus, editus*, vel cum vel sine præpositione ; ablativum *exi*, *dr. c. u.* ;

*Nate Ded.* Virg.

*Sate sanguine Divum.* Virg.

*Hortamur fari quo sanguine cretus.* Virg.

*Anchisæ generate, Deum certissima proles.* Virg.

*Venus, orta mari, mare præstat eunti.* Ovid.

*Te contenta marito,*

*Edita de magno flumine nympha fui.* Ovid.

46. Comparativis subjicitur ablativus rei ad quam comparatio fiat, vel utraque res comparata in eodem casu ponitur, interpositâ conjunctione *quàm* : ut,

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* Hor.

*Melior tutiorque est certa pax, quàm sperata victoria.* Liv.

(a.) Cùm duo adjectiva vel adverbia inter se comparantur, et per *quàm* conjunguntur, in comparativo ambo ferè ponuntur : ut,

*Publii Æmilii concio fuit verior quàm gratior populo.* Liv.

*Non timeo ne libentius hæc in illum evomere videar quàm verius.* Cic.

(b.) Post *minus, plus, amplius, et longius, quàm* interdum omittitur, nihilominus substantivum quod sequitur non in ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Si vos minus hodie decem plebis tribunos feceritis.* Liv.

*Cum plus annum æger fuisset.* Liv.

*Dixit Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hybernis suis abfuisse.* Cæs.

(c.) Aliquando subjiciuntur comparativis *quàm pro cum* substantivo, *quàm qui* vel *quàm ut* cum verbo : ut,



*Prælium atrocius quàm pro numero pugnantium editur.*  
Liv.

*Major sum quàm cui possit fortuna nocere.* Ovid.  
*Flumen latius erat quàm ut tranare possent.*

## PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

47. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, genitivi primitivorum, ponuntur cùm persona significatur: ut,

*Languet desiderio tui.*

*Parsque tui lateat corpore clausa meo.* Ov.

*Imago nostri.*

48. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, ponuntur cùm actio vel possessio rei significatur: ut,

*Favet desiderio tuo.*

*Imago nostra*, (i. e. *quam nos possidemus*.)

49. Pronomina possessiva hos genitivos post se interdum recipiunt, *ipsius, solius, unius, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

*Dixi meâ unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam.* Cic.

*Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.*

*Cùm mea nemo*

*Scripta legat, vulgo recitare timentis.* Hor.

*De tuo ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis.* Cic.

*In suâ cujusque laude præstantior.*

*Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.*

*Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus.* Cic.

50. *Sui et suus* reciproca sunt, id est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit: ut,

*Sentit animus se vi suâ non alienâ moveri.* Cic.

*Oravit me pater, ut ad se venirem.* Cic.

51. Hæc demonstrativa, *hic, iste, ille, is*, fere sic distinguuntur; *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat; *iste*, eum qui apud te est; *ille*, eum qui ab utroque remotus est; *is*, eum de quo mentio fit.

52. Quum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius, refertur: ut,

*Cæsar munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato: Ille mansuetudine clarus factus; huic severitas dignitatem addiderat.* Sall.

(a.) Nonnunquam vero hic et ille mutatas vices habent: ut, *Melior tutiorque est certa pax quàm sperata victoria; hæc in tuâ, illa in Deorum potestate est.* Liv.

53. *Idem copulativam vim sæpe habet: ut, Nil liberale est quod non idem justum.* Cic.

*Operam in res obscuras conferunt, easdemque non necessarias.* Cic.

## VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### *Nominativus post Verbum.*

54. Verba substantiva, ut *sum, fio, existo*; verba vocandi passiva, ut *nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor*, et iis similia, ut *videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eodem casus habent: ut,

*Deus est mundi Creator.*

*Natura beatis*

*Omnibus esse dedit.*

*Ex nitido fit rusticus.* Hor.

*Opiferque per orbem*

*Dicor.* Ovid.

*Da mihi fallere, da justo sanctoque videri.* Hor.

(a.) Item omnia ferè verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum nominativo verbi casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,

*Pii orant taciti.*

*Malus pastor dormit supinus.*

### *Genitivus post Verbum.*

55. *Sum et fio* genitivum postulant, quoties significant possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: ut,

*Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.* Cic.

*Thebæ populi Romani belli jure factæ sunt.* Liv.

56. Verba accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum criminis vel poenæ exigunt, accusativum personæ: ut,

*Alterum ambitus accusat.* Cic.

*Proditionis eum insimulabant.* Cæs.

*Octupli damnatus est.* Cic.

57. Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, interdum (cùm de crimine agitur) cum præpositione *de*: ut,

*Si in me iniquus es iudex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine.* Cic.

*Non ob eam rem capite damnaver.* Cic.

*Licinium de aleâ condemnatum restituit.* Cic.

(a.) *Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo*, et adjectiva superlativa, non nisi in ablativo hujusmodi verbis junguntur: ut,

*Accusas furti, an stupri? Utroque.*

*De plurimis simul accusaris.*

58. Verba miserendi genitivum postulant, præter miseror, qui soli accusativo jungitur: ut,

*Oro miserere laborum*

*Tantium, miserere animi non digna ferentis.* Virg.

*O sola infandos Trojæ miserata labores.* Virg.

59. Verba reminiscendi et obliviscendi genitivum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

*Proprium est stultitiæ aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.* Cic.

*Nec reterum memini lætorve malorum.* Virg.

*Flagitiorum suorum recordabitur.* Cic.

*Tu, C. Cæsar, oblivisci nihil soles nisi injurias.* Cic.

*Hæc olim meminisse juvabit.* Virg.

*Si ritè audita recordor.* Virg.

60. Verba admonendi genitivum rei exigunt, accusativum personæ; interdum ablativum rei cum præpositione *de*; interdum geminum accusativum: ut,

*Catilina admonēbat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ.* Sall.

*Putavi eâ de re te esse admonendum.* Cic.

*Unoquoque gradu de avaritiâ tuâ commonemur.* Cic.

*Illud me præclare admones.* Cic.

**61.** *Potior* aut genitivo aut ablativo jungitur: ut,

*Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.* Sall.

*Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troës arendâ.* Virg.

*Dativus post Verbum.*

**62.** Omnia ferè verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cujus causâ aliquid fit, aut in quam actio refertur: ut,

*Sic nullum vobis tempus abibit iners.* Ovid.

*Laomedonti magna facta est injuria.* Cic.

*Pisistratus sibi non patriæ Megarenses vicit.* Cic.

*Hoc omnibus patet.* Cic.

*Quid voveat dulci nutricula majus alumno?* Juv.

*Appius mihi blanditur.* Cic.

*Civitas Romana parum olim vacabat liberalibus studiis.* Cic.

*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.* Virg.

*Consulte vobis, prospicite patriæ.* Cic.

*Medici timent ægris vini noxam.* Plin.

(a.) *Sed delecto, juvo, lædo, accusativum exigunt: ut,*

*Non omnes arbusta juvant.* Virg.

**63.** Verba comparandi regunt dativum; interdum etiam accusativum vel ablativum, cum præpositionibus *inter* vel *cum*: ut,

*Sic parvis componere magna solebam.* Virg.

*Hominem cum homine, rem cum re comparate* Cic.

*Partes honestatis inter se comparemus.* Cic.

**64.** Verba dandi, reddendi, et contraria, regunt dativum: ut,

*Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.* Mart.

*Quis te mihi casus ademit?* Ovid.

*Æs alienum mihi numeravit.* Cic.

65. Verba appropinquandi, adjungendi, et iis contraria, dativum exigunt: ut,

*Nescit equo rudis hærere ingenuus puer.* Hor.

*Forti miscebat mella Falerno.* Hor.

*Currui jungit equos.* Virg.

*Paulum sepultæ distat inertiae*

*Celata virtus: Eripe te moræ.* Hor.

(a.) Quædam ex his composita cum præpositione *ad* accusativum cum *ad* admittunt; et interdum verba amovendi et distandi ablativum cum præpositione, vel (apud poetas) sine præpositione, admittunt: ut,

*Hi ad summam aquam appropinquant.* Cic.

*Seston Abydenæ separat urbe fretum.* Ovid.

*A malis igitur mors nos abducit, non à bonis.* Cic.

*Quantum distet ab Inacho Codrus narras.* Hor.

66. Verba imperandi, parendi, resistendi, et dicendi, regunt dativum: ut,

*Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.* Hor.

*Dic mihi, quid feci?* Ovid.

*Quæ tibi promitto me sanctissimè esse observaturum.*

Cic.

*Tempore paret equus lentis animosus habenis.* Ovid.

*Omnibus ejus dictis repugnaui.*

(a.) Excipe rego, guberno, jubeo, quæ accusativum; *tempero* et *moderor*, quæ vel dativum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

*Fortem hoc animum tolerare jubebo.*

*Ille regit dictis animos.* Virg.

*Te hortor, ut omnia gubernes prudentiâ tuâ.* Cic.

*Sit censor, qui viros doceat moderari uxoribus.* Cic.

*Non voluptate sed officio consilia moderari decet.* Cic.

*Æolus ventorum temperat iras.* Virg.

*Vix temperavere animis.* Liv.

67. Verba irascendi regunt dativum: Verba condonandi dativum personæ, accusativum culpæ, si ambobus exprimuntur; si alterum tantum, dativum: Verba minandi dativum personæ, accusativum rei: ut,

*Adolescenti nihil est quod succenseam.* Ter.

*Homines omnia sibi ignoscunt.* Sall.

*Utrique mortem est minitatus.* Cic.

68. Verba fidendi et iis contraria dativum exigunt: ut  
*Vacuis committere venis nil nisi lene decet.* Hor.  
*Diffidit perpetuitati bonorum suorum.* Cic.

(a.) Interdum vero verba fidendi ablativo junguntur: ut,  
*Fortunæ stabilitate confidit.* Cic.

69. Dativum fermè regunt verba composita cum his  
 adverbiiis, *benè, malè, satis*; et cum his præpositionibus,  
*ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super,*  
*dis, re*: ut,

*Dii tibi benefaciant.* Ter.

*Concionanti circumfundebatur multitudo.* Liv.

*Judices sibi constare, et superioribus convenire judiciis  
 debuerant.* Cic.

*Campus interjacens Tiberi et mænibus Romanis.* Liv.

*Omnibus ejus consiliis obstiti.* Cic.

*Vos est postponere natis*

*Ausa suis.* Ovid.

*Brutum copiis præfecit.* Cic.

*Ora ipsa oculis proponite.* Cic.

*Magnitudine animi potest repugnari fortunæ.* Cic.

*Superfuit patri.* Liv.

(a) Nonnulla tamen ex his accusativum interdum regunt:  
 ut,

*Præstat ingenio alius alium.* Quint.

*Beatum est post mortem convenire eos, qui justè et cum  
 fide vixerint.* Cic.

70. Passivis verbis subjicitur interdum dativus  
 agentis, interdum ablativus cum præpositione, (*Vid.*  
*Reg. 78*): ut,

*Hoc in laboribus viventi non intelligitur.* Cic.

*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.* Hor.

71. *Sum*, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dati-  
 um, alterum personæ, alterum rei: ut,

*Exitio est avidis mare nautis.* Hor.

*Quinque cohortes castris præsidio reliquit.* Cæs.

*Hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.* Cæs.

*Accusativus post Verbum.*

72. Verba transitiva exigunt accusativum : ut,

*Arma virumque cano.* Virg.

*Mortem non deprecor, inquit.* Virg.

73. Verba neutralia sæpe accusativum cognatæ significationis post se habent : ut,

*Duram servit servitutem.*

*Nec vox hominem sonat ; O Dea, certè.* Virg.

(a.) Verba neutralia aliquando etiam accusativum regunt ejus rei, quæ causam significat : ut,

*Id tibi succenseo.* Cic.

74. Verba rogandi, docendi, celandi, cogendi, sæpe duplicem regunt accusativum : ut,

*Tu modò posce Deos veniam.* Virg.

*Ea ne me celet consuefeci filium.* Ter.

*Quid nunc te, asine, literas doceam ?* Cic.

*Quid non mortalia pectora cogis*

*Auri sacra fames ?* Virg.

(a.) Sæpe etiam verba docendi per ellipsin ablativum admittunt : ut,

*Socratem fidibus docuit nobilissimus fidicen* (i. e. *fidibus ludere.*) Cic.

75. Quædam etiam verba motûs cum præpositionibus *ad*, *trans*, *circum*, *præter*, composita, duplicem regunt accusativum, quorum alter ad præpositionem refertur : ut,

*Iberum copias trajecit.* Liv.

*Idem jusjurandum adigit Afranium.* Cæs.

76. Verba quæ activâ voce duplicem regunt accusativum, et verba vestiendi, etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent : ut,

*Posceris exta bovis.*

*Belgæ Rhenum transducuntur.* Cæs.

*Induiturque aures lentè gradientis aselli.* Ovid.

*Ablativus post Verbum.*

77. Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum, significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis : ut,

*Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.* Virg.  
*Miltiades summâ æquitate res Chersonesi constituit.*  
 Corn. Nep.

*Victoriâ suâ gloriantur.* Cæs.

*Lacte vivunt.* Cæs.

*Lepōre omnibus præstitit.* Cic.

*Delicto dolere, correctione gaulere, nos oportet.* Cic.

*Fruementum flumine Arari navibus subvexerat.* Cæs.

78. Cùm nomen agentis sequitur verbum, in ablativo cum præpositione ponitur (*Vid. Reg. 70*): ut,  
*Pompeius à Cæsare victus est.*

79. Verbis emendi, vendendi, æstimandi, plerumque subjicitur ablativus pretii: ut,

*Multo sanguine Pænis victoria stetit.* Liv.

*Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.*

Plin.

(a.) Interdum subjicitur genitivus, voce pretio subauditâ: ut,  
*Nequicquam iis pensi est quid faciant.* Liv.  
*Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt.* Cic.

(b.) *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, plurimi, cum paucis* similibus, post hæc verba sæpe usurpantur: ut,  
*Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris.* Cic.  
*Hephæstionem Alexander plurimi fecerat.*

80. Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his contraria, ablativo junguntur: ut,

*Amore abundas, Antipho.* Ter.

*Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit.* Sall.

*Te quibus mendaciis homines levissimi onerârunt?* Cic.

*Vela queror reditu, verba carere fide.* Ov.

*Pane egeo.* Hor.

(a.) Sæpè etiam verba egendi et implendi genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinæ.* Virg.

*Non tam artis indigent quàm laboris.* Cic.

81. Verba abstinendi atque arcendi regunt ablativum, interdum cum præpositione, quæ quidem ante personam semper usurpatur: ut,



*L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit.* Cic.

*Te à quartanâ liberatum gaudeo.* Cic.

*Apud veteres Romanos quemcunque mortalium arcere tecto nefas habebatur.* Tac.

*Tu Jupiter hunc à tuis aris, à tectis urbis arcebis.* Cic.

(a.) Apud poetas (ad usum Græcorum) verba abstinendi aliquando genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Abstineto,*

*Dixit, irarum calidæque rixæ.* Hor.

*Desine mollium*

*Tandem querelarum.* Hor.

82. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto*, et composita, et *supersedeo*, ablativo junguntur: ut,

*Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ fungatur officiis.* Cic.

*Hannibal, cùm victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.* Flor.

*Quid puer Ascanius, superatne et vescitur aurâ?* Virg.

*Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.* Virg.

*Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata rotundis.* Hor.

*Verborum multitudine supersedendum est.* Cic.

83. *Pascor* et *nitor* ablativo, vel sine præpositione vel cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,

*Floribus et victu pascuntur simplicis herbæ.* Virg.

*Pascitur in vivis Livor.* Ov.

*Purâ juvenis qui nititur hastâ.* Virg.

*In vitâ Pompeii nitebatur salus civitatis.* Cic.

84. Ablativus absolutus dicitur quoties substantivum in ablativo cum participio construitur, vel adjectivo, (interdum etiam cum alio substantivo,) ut tempus vel modum, vel aliam rem comitantem, denotet: ut,

*Archilochus regnante Romulo floruit.* Cic.

*Nihil de hac re agi potest salvis legibus.* Cic.

*Exposito quid iniquitas loci posset.* Cæs.

*Me duce, tutus eris.* Ov.

85. Verbis quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ, et poeticè accusativus: ut,

*Micat auribus et tremit artus.* Virg.

(a.) Quædam usurpantur, (ad usum Græcorum, sed rarissimè) etiam cum genitivo: ut,

*Absurdè facis, qui angas te animi.* Plaut.

86. *Fixsulo* ablativum, *veneo* ablativum cum præpositione, *vapulo* ablativum, vel sine præpositione vel cum præpositione, admittit: ut,

*Mente tamen, quæ sola loco non exsulat, utar.* Ov.

*Respondit se malle à cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire.* Quint.

*Testis rogatus est an ab reo fustibus vapulasset.* Quint.  
*Omnium sermonibus se sentiet vapulare.* Cic.

## VERBA INFINITA.

87. Verbis quibusdam, et participiis et adjectivis, adduntur verba infinita: ut,

*Dicere quæ puduit scribere jussit amor.* Ov.

*Jussus confundere fædus.* Virg.

*Erat tum dignus amari.* Virg.

88. Verba rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, et contraria, raro (nisi apud poetas) infinitivum post se habent, plerumque vero conjunctionem cum subjunctivo, (*Vid. Reg. 133*): ut,

*Illud te oro et hortor, ut in munere tuo diligentissimus sis.* Cic.

*Moneo obtestorque, ne hos, qui tibi genere propinqui sunt, negligas.* Cic.

*Themistocles persuasit populo ut classis ædificaretur.*  
Corn. Nep.

(a.) Ex his vero *jubeo* et *veto* etiam in pedestri sermone infinitivo sæpius junguntur: ut,

*Hannibal Tarentinos sine armis convocari jussit.* Liv.

89. Verba efficiendi conjunctio cum subjunctivo semper sequitur: ut,

*Tu, quicquid indagaris de republicâ, facito ut sciam.*  
Cic.

90. Verba accidendi et similia conjunctio cum subjunctivo plerumque sequitur : ut,

*Persæpe evenit ut utilitas cum honestate certet.* Cic.  
*Amicis quoniam satisfeci, reliquum est ut ænomen mihi consulam.* Corn. Nep.

(a.) Sed *contingit* infinitivus sæpe sequitur : ut,  
*Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.* Hor.

91. Verba permittendi, optandi, cogendi, vel infinitivum, vel *ut* cum subjunctivo, admittunt (*Vid. Reg. 133*) : ut,

*Phaethon optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur.* Cic.  
*Natura non patitur ut aliorum spoliis nostras opes augeamus.* Cic.

*Permites ipsis expendere numinibus, quid Conveniat nobis.* Juv.

92. *Oportet* et *necesse est* interdum infinitivum, sæpius subjunctivum, post se habent : ut,

*Valeat possessor oportet.* Hor.  
*Tanquam ita fieri non solum oporteret, sed etiam necesse esset.* Cic.

*Corpus mortale intereat necesse est.*

93. Post verba orandi, imperandi, vel volendi, *ut* sæpe omittitur, verbum tamen in subjunctivo ponitur : ut,

*Te pro amore nostro rogo atque oro, te colligas virumque præbeas.* Cic.

*Postero die rex edixit omnes armati coirent.* Q. Curt.  
*Vellem Dî immortales fecissent ut vivo Ser. Sulpicio gratias ageremus.* Cic.

*Malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quàm stulti cives laudent.* Liv.

(a.) Sic post *cave* sæpe omittitur *ne* : ut,  
*Cave existimes me abjecisse curam reipublicæ.* Cic.

94. Ponuntur interdum sola per ellipsin verba infinita : ut,

*Hinc spargere voces*  
*In vulgum ambiguas, et quærere conscius arma.* Virg.  
 (Hic subauditur incipiebat.)

## GERUNDIA.

95. Gerundia in *di* eandem cum genitivis constructionem habent, et pendent à substantivis vel ab adjectivis, nunquam à verbis: ut,

*Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi.* Virg.

*Æneas celsâ in puppi jam certus eundi.* Virg.

96. Gerundia in *do* eandem cum dativis et ablativi constructionem habent: ut,

*Illud ediscendo scribendoque commune est.* Quinct.

*Alitur vitium vivitque tegendo.* Virg.

(a.) Præpositio *sine* nunquam cum gerundiis in *do* usurpatur. (Vid. Reg. 132.)

97. Gerundia in *dum* eandem cum accusativis constructionem habent, sed præpositionem præcedentem semper exigunt: ut,

*Locus ad agendum amplissimus.* Cic.

*Mores puerorum se inter ludendum simplicius detegunt.* Quinct.

98. Si verbum accusativum regit, gerundivum sæpius usurpatur quàm gerundium: ut,

*Timotheus peritus fuit civitatis regendæ.* Corn. Nep.

*Ad accusandos homines duci præmio, proximum latrocinio est.*

(a.) Usurpantur eodem modo *utor, fruor, fungor, potior*: ut, *Justitiæ fruendæ causâ videntur olim bene morati reges constituti.* Cic.

*Omnia bona ei utenda tradiderat.* Cic.

99. Gerundivum in nominativo (et in accusativo, cùm verbum infinitivi modi adjungitur, vel subauditur) necessitatem, vel officium, vel possibilitatem indicat: ut,

*Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.* Juv.

*Diligentia præcipuè colenda est nobis, et semper adhibenda.* Cic.

*Eos à se observandos et colendos putabat.* Cic.

## SUPINA.

100. Supinum in *um* activam significationem habet, et sequitur verbum significans motum ad locum: ut,

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.* Ov.

101. Supinum in *u* passivam significationem habet, et sequitur adjectiva: ut,

*Quod factu fædum est, idem est et dictu turpe.*

## VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

102. Verba quæ nominativum non habent, neque ultra tertiam personam singularem et infinitivum inflectuntur, impersonalia dicuntur: ut,

*Hinc tonat, hinc missis abrumpitur ignibus æther.* Ov.

103. Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur; et his ablativis, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*: ut,

*Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.*

*Tuâ refert teipsum nôsse.*

(a.) Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, minoris*, et similia: ut,

*Tanti refert honesta agere.*

104. Verba impersonalia casus pro sensu regunt, more aliorum verborum: ut,

*Oratorem irasci minimè decet.* Cic.

*Licuit Themistocli esse otioso.* Cic.

105. His verbis *attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*, propriè additur præpositio *ad*: ut,

*Me vis dicere quod ad te attinet?* Ter.

106. *Decet*, *attinet*, et *spectat*, quamvis impersonalia dicuntur, nominativum sæpe habent, et in tertiâ personâ plurali sæpe inveniuntur: ut,

*Candida pax homines, trux decet ira feras.* Ovid.

*Quæ nihil attinent.* Ter.

*Ea non ad religionem spectant.* Cic.

107. His impersonalibus, *pœnitent, tædet, miseret, pudet, piget*, subjicitur accusativus personæ, cum genitivo rei : ut,

*Malo me fortunæ pœniteat quàm victoriæ pudeat.*  
Curt.

*Ne non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.*

*Eorum nos miseret.* Cic.

*Si non pertæsum thalami tædæque fuisset.* Virg.

(a.) Interdum res exprimitur, vel verbo infinitivi modi, vel conjunctione *quodd* et verbo: ut,

*Non me pudet fateri nescire quodd nesciam.* Cic.

*Pœnitent me quodd te offendi.* Cic.

108. Pleraque passiva verba in impersonalia verti possunt in tertiâ personâ singulari, et dativum agentis vel ablativum cum præpositione post se admittunt (qui vero sæpius subauditur.) eum vero casum objecti quem verbum activum regit : ut,

*Quo ruitis, generosa domus? Malè creditur hosti.*  
Ovid.

*In alium quendam locum ex his locis morte migratur.*  
Cic.

## DE TEMPORE.

109. Quæ significant partem temporis, in ablativo ponuntur : ut,

*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.* Plin.

110. Quæ durationem temporis significant, in accusativo ponuntur : ut,

*Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos.* Virg.

(a.) Interdum cùm ætas hominis significatur, genitivus usurpatur : ut,

*Hamilcar secum in Hispaniam duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem.* Corn. Nep.

(b.) Interdum, sed perrarè, duratio temporis per ablativum significatur : ut,

*Triginta annis vixit Panætius, posteaquam libros de officiis ediderat.* Cic.

## SPATIUM LOCI.

111. Spatium loci in accusativo ponitur, cùm motus significatur; in ablativo, cùm statio: ut,

*Jam mille passus processeram.* Liv.

*Millibus passuum sex à Cæsaris castris concedit.* Cæs.

(a.) Interdum vero accusativus usurpatur etiam cùm statio significatur: ut,

*Mille ferè et quingentos passus castra ab urbe locat.* Liv.

*Dicimus etiam abest bidui, ubi subauditur itinere, vel iter.*

## NOMINA LOCORUM.

112. Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis et singularis numeri sit: ut,

*Quid Romæ faciam?* Juv.

(a.) Hi genitivi, *domi, humi, militiæ, belli*, nominum priorum sequuntur formam: ut,

*Præterea, quibuscunque rebus vel belli vel domi poterunt, rempublicam augeant.* Cic.

*Procumbit humi bos.* Virg.

*Unà semper militiæ et domi fuimus.* Ter.

113. Verùm si oppidi nomen pluralis numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Colchus an Assyrius, Thebis nutritus an Argis.* Hor.

*Romæ Tibur amo, ventosus, Tibure Romam.* Hor.

114. Verbis significantibus motum *ad locum* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

*Atque aliquis, Doctas jam nunc eat, inquit, Athenas.*  
Ovid.

(a.) Hanc constructionem sequuntur *domus* et *rus*: ut,  
*Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.* Virg.  
*Ego rus ibo.*

115. Verbis significantibus motum *à loco* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in ablativo sine præpositione: ut,  
*Nisi ante Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres.*

(a.) Perrarò post verba motûs præpositiones ante nomina urbium inveniuntur: ut,

*Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam.* Cic.

*Segesta ab Ænèd fugiente à Trojà condita est.* Cic.

(b.) Interdum etiam regionum nomina post verba motûs in accusativo vel ablativo pro sensu ponuntur, sine præpositione: ut,

*Germanicus Ægyptum proficiscitur.* Tac.

*Dein Piso abire Syriâ statuit.* Tac.

(c.) Apud poetas quodvis substantivum quod verbum motûs ad locum sequitur, in accusativo interdum ponitur: ut,

*Speluncam Dido dux et Trojanus eandem*

*Deveniunt.* Virg.

*Verba refers aures non pervenientia nostras.* Ovid.

## ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

116. ADVERBIA loci, *ubi, ubique, ubicunque, usquam, nusquam, huc, eo, quo, et cætera*, interdum genitivos *terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum*, et, cùm gradum significant, alios genitivos post se habent: ut,

*Ubicunque terrarum et gentium violatum jus civium Romanorum est, ad communem libertatis causam pertinet.* Cic.

*Nescire videmini quo amentiae progressi sitis.* Liv.

*Eo miseriarum venturus eram.* Sall.

(a.) Sic post *tum, tunc*, genitivus *temporis* aliquando occurrit, sed non apud optimos auctores: ut,

*Nihil tunc temporis amplius quàm flere poteram.*

117. *Pridie* et *postridie* genitivum *diei*, et accusativum partium mensis, vel nominum festorum, post se admittunt: ut,

*Pridie ejus diei venit in Senatum.*

*Pridie calendas abiit.*

118. Adverbia quantitatis genitivum admittunt: ut, *Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum.* Sall.

119. Quædam adverbia casus eosdem admittunt qui à vocibus, à quibus derivantur, exiguntur: ut,

*Sulpicius Gallus omnium nobilium maximè Græcis literis studuit.* Cic.



*Exercitum habuit quàm proximè hostem.* Cic.

120. *Ergo* genitivum post se habet: ut,  
*Donari virtutis ergo benevolentiaeque.* Cic.

121. *Procul* ablativo interdum jungitur: ut,  
*Multi suam rem benè gessere et publicam patriâ procul.* Cic.

(a.) Apud poetas et serioris ævi scriptores, *clam*, *palam*, et *inimul* ablativo junguntur; et aliquando *usque* cum accusativo vel ablativo: ut,

*Clam uxore meâ et filio.* Ter.

*Simul his te, candide Furni.....dicere possum.* Hor.

*Corpora usque pedes carbaso velabant.* Curt.

## CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

122. CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt: ut,  
*Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.*  
*Nec scribit nec legit.*

*Occidit,*

*Nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgili.* Hor.

(a.) Nisi variæ constructionis ratio aliud poscat: ut,  
*Emi librum centussi et pluris.*  
*Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.*

123. Pro quàm post comparativum poetæ interdum usurpant atque: ut,

*Arctius atque hederæ procera astringitur ilex.* Hor.

124. Cùm comparatio significatur, sæpe usurpatur tam, respondente quàm: ut,

*Veliem tam domestica ferre possem quàm ista contemnere.* Cic.

125. Cùm significatur aliquid maximum esse quod fieri potest, sæpè usurpatur superlativus præcedente quàm, interdum quàm possum: ut,

*Mihi nihil fuit optabilius quàm ut quàm gratissimæ erga te esse cognosceret.* Cic.

*Cæsar ad hostem quàm maximis potuit itineribus contendit.* Cæs.

(a.) Pro *quàm* ante superlativum *maximus*, *quantus* aliquando usurpatur : ut,

*Hannibal quantam maximam vastitatem potest cædibus incendiisque efficit.* Liv.

126. *Donec*, *quoad*, et *dum*, cùm ad tempus refertur, indicativum modum plerumque exigunt, subjunctivum rarius : ut,

*Priami dum regna manebant.* Virg.

*Milo in senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est.* Cic.

*Donec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit.* Liv.

*Haud desinam donec perfecero.* Ter.

*Tertia dum regnantem viderit ætas.* Virg.

*Expectas fortasse dum hæc dicat.* Cic.

127. *Dummodo*, et *dum*, vel *modo* pro *dummodo* usurpata, soli subjunctivo junguntur : ut,

*Omnia postposui dummodo præceptis patris pārērem.* Cic.

*Oderint dum metuant.* Cic.

*Manent ingenia senibus modo permaneat studium et industria.* Cic.

128. *Quum*,\* causam significans, vel connectionem aliquam duarum sententiarum denotans, subjunctivo jungitur ; si usurpetur pro *quòd*, indicativo : ut,

*Druentia, quum aquæ vim vehat ingentem, non tamen navium patiens est.* Liv.

*Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metûs plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare.* Cic.

*Præclarè facis quum Luculli memoriam tenes.* Cic.

129. *Quum*, sequente *tum*, interdum subjunctivo, sæpius indicativo jungitur : ut,

*Quum multæ res in philosophiâ nequicquam satis explicatæ sint, tum perdifficilis quæstio est de naturâ Deorum.* Cic.

---

\* *Quum* sæpe scribitur *cùm*.

*Quum cognitionem juris augurii consequi cupio, tum meherculè tuis incredibiliter studiis delector.* Cic.

130. *Quum*, tempus significans, interdum indicativo, interdum subjunctivo, jungitur : ut,

*Qui non propulsat injuriam à suis, quum potest, injustè facit.* Cic.

*Ad Hannibalem quum ad lacum Averni esset, quinque nobiles juvenes venerunt.* Liv.

*Erit illud profectò tempus, quum gravissimi hominis fidem desideres.* Cic.

131. *Antequam* et *priusquam* subjunctivo junguntur si res in dubio est, vel si duæ res de quibus agitur connectuntur ; aliter, indicativum admittunt : ut,

*Tempestas minatur antequam surgat.* Sen.

*Ante omnia veneunt quam gleba una ematur.* Cic.

*Quàm benè vivebant Saturno rege, priusquam*

*Tellus in longas est patefacta vias.* Tib.

132. *Quin* et *quominus* negationem, vel dubitationem, vel simile aliquid sequentia, subjunctivum exigunt : ut,

*Non dubitat quin brevi Troja sit peritura.* Cic.

*Parmenio Philippum deterrere voluit quominus medicamentum biberet.* Curt.

*Tiberium non solitudines protegebant quin tormenta pectoris fateretur.* Tac.

133. Conjunctiones finales, *ut*, *quo*, *ne*, et aliæ ab his derivatæ, subjunctivum exigunt : ut,

*Pylades Oresten se esse dixit, ut pro illo necaretur.* Cic.

*Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur.* Sen.

*Vereor ne tuum laborem augeam.* Cic.

134. *Ut*, cùm tempus vel comparisonem significat, indicativum post se habet : ut,

*Ut sumus in Ponto, ter frigore constitit Ister.* Ovid.

*Ut fugiunt aquilam, timidissima turba, columbæ.* Ov.

(a.) *Ut* pro *ubi* (rarus est usus) indicativo jungitur : ut,  
*Lattus ut longè resonante Eod tunditur undâ.* Cat.

135. *Ut* pro *quamvis* subjunctivo jungitur : ut,  
*Ut fueris dignior, non competitor in culpâ est.* Cic.

136. *Utinam* subjunctivum exigit : ut,  
*Tu quoque cum ventis utinam mutabilis esses.* Cic.  
*Illud utinam ne verè scriberem.* Cic.

137. *Licet* subjunctivo jungitur ; *quamvis* subjunctivo sæpius quam indicativo, nisi apud poetas ; *quanquam* indicativo sæpius quam subjunctivo ; *etsi* vel indicativo vel subjunctivo : ut,

*Improbilus, licet adversario molesta sit, judici invisus est.* Quint.

*Quod turpe est, id, quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest.* Cic.

*Romani, quanquam prælio fessi erant, tamen procedunt.* Sall.

*Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt quod decet, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident.*  
 Cic.

138. *Si* et *nisi*, cùm indicatur rem de quâ agitur vel existere, vel posse existere, indicativo modo, vel præsentis vel perfecti subjunctivi junguntur ; cùm indicatur rem non existere, imperfectum vel plusquamperfectum subjunctivi exigunt : ut,

*Hunc patris loco, si ulla in te pietas esset, colere debebas.* Cic.

*Si unquam visus tibi sum fortis, certè me in illâ causâ admiratus esses.* Cic.

*Tu, nisi ventis*

*Debes ludibrium, cave.* Hor.

*Multa me dehortantur à vobis, nē studium reipublicæ superet.* Sall.

139. *Quasi*, *tanquam*, et similia, subjunctivum exigunt : ut,

*Quid ego his testibus utor, quasi res incerta ac dubia esset.* Cic.

*Sic cogitandum est tanquam aliquis in intimum pectus inspicere possit.* Sen.

140. *Quòd, quia, quoniam*, indicativo junguntur, cùm opinionem loquentis indicant; cùm aliorum, subjunctivo: ut,

*Refugit te, quia rugæ*

*Turpant et capitis nives.* Hor.

*Laudat Panætius Africanum, quòd fuerit abstinens.* Cic.

141. *Utrum, ne, an, num*, cùm dubitationem vel obliquam interrogationem significant, subjunctivum postulant, etiamsi conjunctio ipsa subaudiatur: ut,

*Difficile est dictu utrum hostes magis Pompeii virtutem pugnantes timuerint, an mansuetudinem victi dilexerint.* Cic.

*Legati speculari jussi sunt num sollicitati animi sociorum a rege Perseo essent.* Liv.

*Doleam necne doleam nihil interest.* Cic.

142. *Ne*, cùm prohibet, imperativo vel subjunctivo jungitur: ut,

*Ne temne quòd ultrò*

*Præferimus manibus vittas.* Virg.

*Tu ne quæsieris quem mihi, quem tibi*

*Finem Dî dederint.* Hor.

143. Omnes voces quæ interrogationem meram exprimunt, indicativo junguntur: ut,

*Tune id veritus es?* Cic.

*Num eum facti piget?* Cic.

*Quis fuit horrendos qui primus protulit enses?* Tib.

## DE RELATIVO.

144. *Qui* causam significans subjunctivum exigit: ut,  
*Clusini legatos Romam, qui auxilium à Senatu peterent, misere.* Liv.

*Voluptas non est digna ad quam sapiens respiciat.* Sen.

145. Cùm vero relativa *propositio* substantivi locum supplet, verbum in indicativo ponitur: ut,

*Num alii oratores probantur à multitudine, alii ab iis qui intelligunt?* (i. e. à sapientibus.) Cic.

*Quoscunque de te queri audiui* (i. e. omnes querentes) placavi. Cic.

146. Omnes voces indefinitè positæ, vel in obliquâ oratione, vel in sententiâ ab aliâ pendente, subjunctivum postulant: ut,

*Innocentia est affectio talis animi quæ noceat nemini.* Cic.

*Cui scribam video.* Cic.

*Experto credite, quantus*

*In clypeum assurgat, quo turbine torqueat hastam.* Virg.

## PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### 147. Præpositiones

*Adversum adversus, cis citra, apud, ante, penesque,*

*Intra, infra, contra, supra, post, circiter, inter,*

*Circa circum, ultra, juxta, erga, præter, et extra,*

*Ob, prope, per, propter, versus, trans, pone, secundum, ad,*  
accusativum regunt: ut,

*Quem penes arbitrium est.* Hor.

*Ter circum Iliacos raptaverat Hectora muros.* Virg.

*Propter aquas.* Virg.

*Amicitia propter se expetenda est.* Cic.

*Per mare pauperiem fugiens.* Hor.

*Ludi decem per dies facti sunt.* Cic.

*Per me unum effectum est ut libertas in civitate maneret.* Cic.

*Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragædias fecit.* Cic.

*Castra ad Cybistra locavi.* Cic.

*Aliquot post menses ad Cæsarem venit.* Cic.

*Post equitem sedet atra cura.* Hor.

*Præter castra Cæsar suas copias transduxit.* Cæs.

*Omnibus sententiis præter unam condemnatus est.* Cic.

148. *A* (ante vocalem *ab*,) *absque, sine, coram, cum, æ e* (ante vocalem *ex*,) *præ, pro*, ablativum regunt: ut,  
*A te principium, tibi desinet.* Virg.

*Tecum mihi discordia est.* Hor.

*Non sine Dīs animosus infans.* Hor.

*Non loqui præ mærore potuit.* Cic.

*Stabat pro templo et Capitolia celsa tenebat.* Virg.

*Cuncta pro hostibus erant.* Tac.

*E consulatu est profectus in Galliam.* Cic.

*Feliciter, et ex meâ sententiâ rempublicam gessit.* Cic.

149. *In, super, sub, et subter* (quod tamen rarò invenitur,) pro sensu accusativum vel ablativum regunt: ut,  
*Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis.* Hor.

*In Senatum venit.* Cic.

*Lucus in arce fuit summûs.* Ovid.

*Super et Garamantas et Indos*

*Proferet imperium.* Virg.

*Multa super Priamo rogitans, super Hectore multa.* Virg.

*Manet sub Jove frigido venator.* Hor.

*Sub eas literas statim recitatæ sunt tuæ.* Cic.

*Multaque me fugiunt primis spectata sub annis.* Ovid.

*Exercitus ejus sub jugum missus est.* Cæs.

*Angusti subter fastigia tecti*

*Æneam duxit.* Virg.

*Subter densâ testudine tuti.* Virg.

150. *Tenus* ablativum singularem, ablativum vel genitivum pluralem regit; et semper casum suum sequitur: ut,

*Lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem.* Virg.

*Et crurum tenus à mento palearia pendent.* Virg.

*Altera per jugulum pennis tenus acta sagitta est.* Ovid.

151. Præpositio in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit quem extra compositionem regebat (*Vid. Reg. 75*): ut,

*Detrudunt naves scopulo. Virg.*

*Prætereunt scopulos Ithacæ.*

152. Verba composita cum *a, ah, ad, con, de*, et aliis præpositionibus, eandem præpositionem sæpe repetunt: ut,

*Abstinuerunt à vino.*

## INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

153. Interjectiones non rarò sine casu ponuntur: ut,  
*Spem gregis, ah! silice in nudâ connixa reliquit. Virg.*

154. *O* vocantis vocativo, exclamantis vocativo vel accusativo, jungitur: ut,

*O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona nòrint,*

*Agrícolas! Virg.*

*O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori. Virg.*

155. *Heu* et *proh* accusativo vel vocativo junguntur: ut,

*Heu pietas, heu prisca fides. Virg.*

*Heu stirpem invisam. Virg.*

*Proh Deûm atque hominum fidem. Ter.*

*Proh sancte Jupiter. Cic.*

156. *Hei* et *væ* dativo junguntur: ut,

*Hei mihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis.*  
Ovid.

*Væ misero mihi, quantâ de spe decidi. Ter.*

157. *En* et *ecce* nominativo vel accusativo junguntur: ut,

*Ecce tibi Italiæ tellus. Virg.*

*En quatuor aras;*

*Ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duoque altaria Phæbo. Virg.*



## PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

Dividitur Prosodia in tres partes, *Tonum*, *Spiritum*, et *Tempus*.

Hoc loco visum est nobis de *Tempore* tantum tractare.

*TEMPUS* est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur; ut, *Dōmīnūs*. Longum autem sic; ut, *cōtrā*.

Pes duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est ex certâ Temporum observatione.

Pes duarum longarum syllabarum est spondæus: ut, *vīrtūs*.

Longa syllaba, duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus, dactylum efficit; ut, *scrībērē*.

SCANSIO est legitima versûs in singulos pedes com mensuratio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*, et *Cæsura*.

I. *Synalæpha* est elisio vocalis in fine dictionis, ante alteram in initio sequentis: ut,

*Sērā nīmīs vīt' ēst crāstīnā, vīv' hōdīē*. Mart.  
pro *vita*; *vive*.

At *heu* et *o* nunquam intercipiuntur.

II. *Ecthlipsis* est, quoties *m* cum suâ vocali perimitur proximâ dictione à vocali exorsâ: ut,

*Mōnstr' hōrrēnd', īnfōrm', īngēns, cui lūmēn ādēptūm*.  
Virg  
pro *monstrum, horrendum, informe*.

III. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio: ut,

*Seū lēntō fūērīnt ālveārīā vīmīnē tēxta.* Virg.  
quasi scriptum esset *alvaria*.

IV. *Diæresis* est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ dissectâ fiunt duæ: ut,

*Dēbūērānt fusōs ēvōlūissē sūōs.* Ov. Ep.  
*evoluisse pro evolvisse.*

V. *Cæsura* est, cūm post pedem absolutum syllaba brevis in fine dictionis extenditur: ut,

*Pēctōribūs īnhāns spīrāntiā cōsūlīt ēxta.* Virg.

## DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.

VERSUS heroïcus, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat ex sex pedibus; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondæum peculiariter sibi vindicat; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus: ut,

*Tītŷrē tū pātŷlāe rēcŷbāns sŷb tēgmīnē fāgī.* Virg.

Reperitur aliquando spondæus etiam in quinto loco: ut,

*Cūrā Dēūm sōhōlēs, māgnūm Jōvis īncrēmētūm.* Virg.

Ultima cujuscunque versûs syllaba habetur communis.

VERSUS elegiacus, qui et *Pentametri* nomen habet, è duplici constat penthemimeri: quarum prior duos pedes, dactylicos, spondiacos, vel alterutros comprehendit, cum syllabâ longâ; altera etiam duos pedes, sed omninò dactylicos, cum syllabâ item longâ: ut,

*Rēs ēst sōllicīti plēnā tīmōris āmor.* Ovid. Epist.

## PRIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eâdem dictione, ubique positione longa est: ut, *vēntus*, *āxis*, *patrīzo*.

II. Quòd si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens etiam positione longa erit: ut,

*Mājor sūm quā́m cū́ pōssīt fōrtūnā nōcēre.*

Syllabæ *jor*, *sum*, *quam*, et *sit*, positione longæ sunt.

(a) At si prior dictio in vocalem brevem exeat, sequente à duabus consonantibus incipiente, interdum, sed rariùs, producitur: ut,

*Fērtē cīfī jērrūm, dātē tēlā, scāndītē mūros.* Virg.

III. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquidâ, communis redditur: ut, *pātris*, *volūcris*: quæ tamen regula in compositis non obtinet: ut, *admīror*, *ābrīpio*, *sūbruo*, *ōbruo*.

VOCALIS ante alteram in eâdem dictione ubique brevis est: ut, *Dēus*, *mēus*, *tūus*, *pīus*.

1. Excipias genitivos in *ius*: ut, *unīus*, *illīus*, &c. ubi *i* communis reperitur; licet in *alterīus* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *faciēi*: alioqui non; ut, *rēi*, *spēi*, *fidēi*.

*Fi* etiam in *fio* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut, *fīerem*, *fīeri*.

*Omnīā jā́m fīūnt, fīērī quā́ pōssē nēgābam.*

*Dīus* primam syllabam habet longam, *Dīana* communem.

*Ohe*, interjectio, priorem syllabam communem habet; *Eheu* penultimam semper producit.

Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit: ut, *Dicite, Pīerides. Respice Laërten.*

Et in possessivis Græcis: ut, *Ænēia nutrix. Rhodopēius Orpheus.*

Omnis diphthongus apud Latinos longa est: ut *aurum, neuter, musae*: nisi sequente vocali, cum interdum corripitur: ut, *præire, præustus.*

DERIVATIVA eandem ferè cum primitivis quantitatē sortiuntur: ut, *āmotor, āmicus, āmabilis*, primā brevi ab *āmo*.

Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ à brevibus deducta, primam syllabam producant: ut,

|                   |                   |  |
|-------------------|-------------------|--|
| <i>cōmo,</i>      | à <i>cōma,</i>    |  |
| <i>fōmes,</i>     | } à <i>fōveo,</i> |  |
| <i>fōmentum,</i>  |                   |  |
| <i>hūmanus,</i>   | ab <i>hōmo,</i>   |  |
| <i>jūcundus,</i>  | } à <i>jūvo,</i>  |  |
| <i>jūmentum,</i>  |                   |  |
| <i>lex lēgis,</i> | à <i>lēgo,</i>    |  |
| <i>mācero,</i>    | à <i>mācer,</i>   |  |
| <i>mōbilis,</i>   | à <i>mōveo,</i>   |  |
| <i>persōna,</i>   | à <i>persōno,</i> |  |

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>rex rēgis,</i>  | } à <i>rēgo,</i>       |
| <i>rēgina,</i>     |                        |
| <i>rēgula,</i>     |                        |
| <i>sēcus,</i>      | à <i>sēcus,</i>        |
| <i>sēdes,</i>      | à <i>sēdeo,</i>        |
| <i>stīpendium,</i> | à <i>stīps stīpis,</i> |
| <i>tēgula,</i>     | à <i>tēgo,</i>         |
| <i>trāgula,</i>    | à <i>trāho,</i>        |
| <i>vox vōcis,</i>  | à <i>vōco.</i>         |

Et contrā sunt, quæ, à longis deducta, primam corripunt: ut,

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>ārena,</i>     | } ab <i>āreo,</i> |
| <i>ārista,</i>    |                   |
| <i>āruno,</i>     |                   |
| <i>āruspex,</i>   | ab <i>āra,</i>    |
| <i>dīcax,</i>     | } à <i>dīco,</i>  |
| <i>mālēdīcus,</i> |                   |
| <i>dītio,</i>     | à <i>dītis,</i>   |
| <i>dux dūcis,</i> | à <i>dūco,</i>    |
| <i>fīdes,</i>     | } à <i>fīdo,</i>  |
| <i>perfidus,</i>  |                   |

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>frāgor,</i>      | } à <i>frāngo,</i>  |
| <i>frāgilis,</i>    |                     |
| <i>lābo,</i>        | à <i>lābor,</i>     |
| <i>lūcerna,</i>     | à <i>lūceo,</i>     |
| <i>mōlestus,</i>    | à <i>mōles,</i>     |
| <i>ōdium,</i>       | ab <i>ōdi,</i>      |
| <i>pāciscor,</i>    | à <i>pax pācis,</i> |
| <i>quandōquidē,</i> | à <i>quandō,</i>    |
| <i>sīquidē,</i>     | à <i>sī,</i>        |
| <i>sōpor,</i>       | à <i>sōpio.</i>     |

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitatem sequuntur : ut, à *lēgo* *lēgis*, *parlēgo* ; à *lēgo* *lēgas*, *allēgo* ; à *pōtens*, *impōtens* ; à *sōlor*, *consōlor*.

Excipiuntur tamen hæc brevia à longis enata : ut, *dejēro*, *pejēro* ; à *jūro* ; *innūba*, *pronūba*, à *nūbo*.

OMNE præteritum dissyllabum priorem habet longam : ut, *lēgi*, *ēmi*, *mōvi*.

1. Excipias tamen, *bībi*, *dēdi*, *scīdi*, *stēti*, *stīti*, *tūli*, et *fīdi* à *fīdo*.

2. Primam præteriti geminantia primam brevem habent : ut, *cēcīdi*, à *cado* ; *cēcīdi*, à *cædo* ; *dīdici*, *fēfelli*, *mōmordi*, *pēpendi*, *pūpugi*, *tētendi*, *tētigi*, *tōtondi*, *tūtudi*.

SUPINUM dissyllabum priorem habet longam : ut, *vīsum*, *lātum*, *lōtum*, *mōtum*.

Excipe *dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, *stātum*, et *cītum* à *cīeo* *cies* ; nam *cītum* à *cīo* *cis*, quartæ, priorem habet longam.

Penultima tertiæ personæ pluralis perfecti activi in *-erunt* desinens, si antepenultima brevis sit, communis habenda est.

## ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. *A* Finita producuntur : ut, *amā*, *contrā*, *ergā*.

Excipias, *itā*, *quā*, *eiā*. Item omnes casus in *a*, cujuscunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis ; præter vocativos à Græcis in *as* ; ut, *ô Æneā* : et ablativum primæ declinationis : ut, *musā*.

II. In *b*, *d*, *t*, puris desinentia, brevia sunt : ut, *āb*, *ād*, *capūt*.

III. In *c* desinentia producuntur : ut, *āc*, *sīc*, et *hīc*, adverbium.

Sed *fāc*, *nēc*, *donēc*, corripiuntur.

Pronomen *hīc*, et neutrum ejus *hōc*, modò non sit ablativi casûs, communia sunt.

IV. *E* finita brevia sunt : ut, *marē*, *penē*, *legē*, *scribē*.

1. Excipiendæ sunt omnes voces quintæ inflectionis in *e* ; ut, *fidē*, *diē*, unà cum particulis indè enatis ; ut, *hodiē*, *quotidiē*, *pridiē*, *postridiē* : item *quarē*, et si qua sunt similia.

2. Et secundæ item personæ singulares secundæ conjugationis ; ut, *docē*, *movē* : præter *cavē*, quod ultimam plerumque corripit.

Producuntur etiam monosyllaba in *e* ; ut, *mē*, *tē*, *sē* : præter *quē*, *nē*, *vē*, conjunctiones encliticas.

Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundæ declinationis deducta, *e* longum habent: ut, *pulchrē, doctē, valdē* pro *validē*.

Quibus accedunt *fermē, ferē*: *benē* tamen et *malē* corripuntur omninò.

Postremò, quæ à Græcis per *η* scribuntur, naturā producuntur, cujuscunque fuerint casûs, generis, aut numeri: ut, *Lethē, Anchisē, celē, Tempē*.

V. *I* finita longa sunt: ut, *dominī, magistrī, amarī*.

Præter *mihī, tibī, sibī, ubī, ibī*, quæ sunt communia.

*Nisī* et *quasī* corripuntur.

Corripuntur quoque dativi et vocativi singulares nominum priorum in *is*, à Græcis derivatorum, quorum genitivus penultimā brevi crescit: ut, dativi *Minoidī, Palladī, Phyllidī*; vocativi *Alexī, Amaryllī, Daphnī*.

VI. *L* finita corripuntur: ut, *animāl, Hannibāl, mēl, pugl, consl*.

Præter *nīl* (contractum à *nihil*), *sāl*, et *sōl*.

VII. *N* finita corripuntur: ut, *ān, carmēn, ĩn, Iliōn, Itĭn*.

Excipiuntur *quīn, nōn*; et nomina pauca à Græcis derivata, quæ penultimam genitivi producunt: ut, *delphīn, delphīnis*; *Xenophōn, Xenophōntis*.

Producuntur quoque accusativi masculini primæ declinationis in *ān* et *ēn*: ut, *Æneān, Anchisēn*; et accusativi fœminini in *ēn* et *rān*: ut, *Pēnēlopēn, Electrān*; cæteri fœminini in *ān* corripuntur: ut, *Maiān, Iphigeniān*.

VIII. *O* finita longa sunt: ut, *dicō, virgō, porrō, legendō.*

Excipiuntur *modō*, et composita ejus; et *sciō, nesciō, putō, citō, egō, homō, cedō*, quæ corripuntur.

(a.) Pauca alia sunt verba in *o* desinentia, quæ ultimam interdum corripunt: ut,

*Te petō quem merui.* Ov.

*Non erō, terra, tuus.* Ov.

*Fortunam vultus fassa tegendō suos.* Ov.

Sed hæc exempla non sunt à tironibus imitanda.

Propria nomina virorum in *o* desinentia communia sunt: ut, *Polliō, Nasō.*

*Duō* quoque et *nemō* ultimam communem habent.

IX. *R* finita corripuntur: ut, *Cæsär, pēr, vīr, uxōr, turtūr.*

Producuntur autem, *fār, Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, cūr*; *pār* quoque, cum compositis: ut, *compār, impār, dispār.*

Græca etiam in *ēr*, quæ illis in *ηρ* desinunt: ut, *aēr, cratēr, charactēr, æthēr*; præter *patēr* et *matēr*, quæ apud Latinos ultimam brevem habent.

X. *S* finita pares cum numero vocalium habent terminationes: nempè, *as, es, is, os, us, ys.*

I. *As* finita producuntur: ut, *amās, musās, majestās, bonitās.*

Præter nomina propria Græca, quorum genitivus singularis penultimam brevem habet: ut, *Arcās, Pallās*; genitivo, *Arcādōs, Pallādōs.*

Et præter accusativos plurales Græco more formatos: ut, *herōs, heroās; gigās, gigantās.*

II. *Es* finita longa sunt: ut, *Anchisēs, sedēs, docēs, patrēs.*



1. Excipiuntur nomina in *es* tertiæ inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripunt: ut, *milēs*, *segēs*, *divēs*. Sed *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, et *pēs*, unà cum compositis, ut *bipēs*, *tripēs*, longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque, à *sum*, unà cum compositis, corripitur; ut, *potēs*, *adēs*, *prodēs*, *obēs*: quibus *penēs* adjungi potest.

3. Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum: ut, *hippomanēs*, *cacoëthēs*. *Cyclopēs*, *Naiadēs*.

III. *Is* finita brevia sunt: ut, *Parīs*, *panīs*, *tristīs*, *hilarīs*.

1. Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is*, qui producuntur: ut, *musis*, *mensis* à *mensa*, *dominīs*, *templīs*; et *quīs* pro *quibus*.

2. Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *Samnīs*, *Sulamīs*; genitivo, *Samnītis*, *Salamīnis*.

3. Et monosyllaba item omnia; ut, *vīs*, *līs*: præter *īs* et *quīs* nominativos, et *hīs* apud Ovidium.

Secunda persona singularis præsentis activi quartæ conjugationis producit *īs*; ut, *audīs*: sic *possīs*, *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*.

Secundæ personæ singulares futuri secundi activi indicativi, et perfecti subjunctivi, *īs* commune faciunt: ut, *fecerīs*, *dederīs*.

(a.) Porrò in his temporibus secunda persona pluralis penultimam communem habet: ut, *dixerītis*, *transierītis*.

*Gratīs* et *forīs* ultimam producent.

IV. *Os* finita producuntur: ut, *honōs*, *nepōs*, *dominūs*, *servōs*.

Præter *compōs*, *impōs*, *ōs* *ossis*, et *exūs*.

Et nomina propria derivata à Græcis in *os* : ut, *Delös*, *Chaös*, *Palladös*, *Phyllidös*.

v. *Us* finita corripiuntur : ut, *famulūs*, *regiūs*, *tempūs*, *amamūs*.

Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis : ut, *salūs*, *tellūs* ; genitivo, *salūtis*, *tellūris*.

Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflectionis in *us*, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares : ut, gen. sing. *manūs* ; nom. accus. voc. plur. *manūs*.

His accedunt etiam monosyllaba : ut, *crūs*, *thūs*, *mūs*, *sūs*.

Et Græca item per *ovç* diphthongum, cujuscunque fuerint casūs : ut, nom. *Panthūs*, *Melampūs* ; gen. *Sap-phūs*, *Clīūs*.

vi. *Ys* finita corripiuntur : ut, *Itÿs*.

XI. *U* finita producuntur omnia : ut, *manū*, *genū*, *amatū*, *diū*.

XII. *Y* finita corripiuntur : ut, *Tiphÿ*.

# PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS;

OR,

## THE GENDERS OF NOUNS,

CONSTRUED.

**I. PROPRIA** *proper names quæ which* tribuuntur *are assigned* maribus *to the male kind* dicas *you may call* mascula *masculines*; ut *as*, sunt *are* Divorum *the names of the heathen Gods*, Mars *the God of war*, Bacchus *the God of wine*, Apollo *the God of wisdom*; Virorum *the names of men*; ut *as* Cato, *a noble Roman*, Virgilius *the Poet Virgil*; Fluviorum *the names of Rivers*; ut *as*, Tibris *the Tiber*, Orontes, *a river by Antioch*; Mensium *the names of months*, ut *as* October *the month October*; Ventorum *the names of winds*, ut *as* Libis *the south-west wind*, Notus *the south wind*, Auster *the south wind*; Montium *the names of mountains*, ut *as* Ossa *mount Ossa*; Alpis *tamen but the Alps* est *is* muliebris *feminine*, et *and* Ceta *mount Ceta*, Cyllene *mount Cyllene*, Rhodope *mount Rhodope*, et *and* Ætna *mount Ætna* gravis *terrible* cæcis ignibus *with hidden fires*; Pelion *mount Pelion* est *neutrum is neuter*; Soracte *mount Soracte*, Ceraunia *the Ceraunian mountains* neutra *are neuter*. (v. 1—7.)

**II. PROPRIA** nomina *proper names* referentia *denoting* foemineum *the female sex* tribuuntur *are given* foemineo generi *to the feminine gender*; sive *whether* sunt *they are* Dearum *the names of Goddesses*, ut *as* Juno *Jupiter's wife*, Venus *the Goddess of beauty*; Muliebria *the names of women*, ut *as* Anna *Anne*, Philotis *Philote*; Urbium *the names of cities*, ut *as* Elis *a city of Peloponnesus*, Opus *a city of Locris*; Regionum *the names of countries*, ut *as* Græcia

*Greece, Persis Persia* : Item also nomen the name insu'æ of an island; *ceu as, Creta Crete, Britannia Britain, Cyprus Cyprus.* (v. 8—12.)

*Dulichium the island Dulichium* neutrum is neuter, ut *ventura regula a coming rule monstrat shews.* Excipias etiam *ou may except also* quasdam urbes *some cities*; nam *for* Imo *Sulmo et and Delphi the town Delphi* mascula are masculine, et similes *and similar words.* *Selinus the town Selinus* enus est utrumque *is of both genders*, *Pharsalus so is Pharsalus*, et *Marathon and Marathon.* Quædam *some are* neutralia *neuter*; ut *as, Argos Argos, Tusculum Tusculum*, item also *Tibur Tivoli, Tarentumque and Taranto* imbelles *luxu effeminate from luxury*; *Pergamaque and Troy*, et *and* quot pluralia *as many plural nouns as* præstant finem in a *have their termination in a.* *Præneste Præneste* dat *gives* fœmineum et neutrum *the feminine and neuter gender*, *Ilion so does Troy, Anxur and Terracina.* *Latium Latium* est neutrum *is neuter*, *Bosphorus the Bosphorus* mas *is masculine*; adjice *add* *Pontus Pontus.* (v. 13—20.)

III. DISCES *you will learn that* nomina gemmarum *the names of precious stones* are fœminei generis *of the feminine gender*, veluti *as* *sapphirus a sapphire*; ast *but* *opalus an opal* mas *is masculine* atque *and* *smaragdus an emerald.* Cernes item *you will see also* nomina *the names* arborum *of trees* muliebria *feminine*; ut *as, alnus an alder-tree, cupressus a cypress-tree, cedrus a cedar-tree.* *Spinus a sloe-tree* mas *is masculine*, *oleaster a wild olive-tree* mas *is masculine.* Plerumque videbis *you will for the most part see* cætera *the rest* in *er* ending in *er* neutrale genus *of the neuter gender*; quale *as, papaver a poppy, acer a maple-tree*; quæis adjice *to which add* thus *frankincense* atque *and* *robur an oak.* *Cytisusque and hadder* rubusque *and a bramble* adjungunt *add* muliebres *the feminine gender* mari *to the masculine*: *intubus* endive in numero plurali *in the plural number* habet *has* *intuba, neutrum of the neuter gender.* (v. 21—28.)

Nomina *the names* volucrum *of birds*; *ceu as, passer a sparrow, hirundo a swallow*: ferarum *of wild beasts*; ut *as, felis a cat, vulpes a fox*: et *and* piscium *the names of fishes*; ut *as, ostrea an oyster, cetus a whale, sunt are dicta called*

*epicœna nouns of the epicene gender; quibus to which vox ipsa the termination itself feret will give genus aptum the right gender.* (v. 29—31.)

*Multa etiam many also dabunt will give commune genus the common gender; ut as, lepus a hare, anser a goose, vespertilio a bat, mus a mouse, grus a crane, bos an ox or cow, canis a dog, atque and elephantus an elephant. Sus a pig, tigris a tiger, et and anguis a snake jungunt join fœmineum the feminine gender mari to the masculine; et and serpens a serpent, damæque and deer, et and talpæ moles egentes lumine deprived of sight.* (v. 32—35.)

#### IV. DECLENSION I.

*As, es, words ending in as and es erunt will be mascula masculines: inflexio prima the first declension habebit will have a, e, words ending in a or e fœminei generis of the feminine gender, nisi unless sensus the sense prohibet forbids. Boreas the north wind, satrapes a satrap, mas are masculine; litera a letter muliebris is feminine, Circe and Circe. Sed but scriba a scribe mas genus is the masculine gender, sic so scurra a buffoon, athleta an athlete, lanista a fencing master.* (v. 36—39.)

#### V. DECLENSION II.

*Secunda the second declension dat gives um nouns ending in um neutrale neuter, us et er nouns ending in us and er plerumque generally mas masculine. Sic so regnum a kingdom neutrum is neuter, dominus a master mas is masculine, atque and magister a teacher. Sed but quæ dicta supra sunt what has been said before dabunt will give legenti the reader pauca a few words excipienda to be excepted; nam for malus an apple arbor being a tree muliebris erit will be feminine, et Abydos and Abydos nomen the name urbis of a city: sic so alvus a belly, humus the ground, colus a distaff, atque and carbasus linen, et and vannus a winnowing machine; sic so phaselus a boat nota known Nilo to the Nile.—Pauca etiam a few also deducta derived Græcis from the Greeks occurrent will occur, papyrus paper, antidotus an antidote, costus the herb zedoary, diphthongus a diphthong, byssus fine flux, et*

*and illa those words quot as many as os breve os short claudit ends; ceu as, Delos Delos, Sestos Sestos, et and Isthmos an isthmus; sed but virus poison, pelagus the sea neutralia are neuter, et and adjice add vulgus the common people, quamvis although interdum sometimes ponas you may class hoc this inter mascula among masculines: non genus est ullum there is not any gender quo in which penus provisions non invenietur will not be found.* (v. 40—51.)

## VI. DECLENSION III.—MASCULINES.

Crede consider voces the words quas which tertia inflexio the third declension reddit affords mares masculine lectori to the reader, si if or, os, er, o quoque and o claudit terminate rectum the nominative case; vel or quas those which es finit ends, quibusque and in which genitivus the genitive case crescit increases: sic so, honor honour, atque and heros a hero, crater a cup, sermoque and a discourse, tapesque and a carpet: at but soror a sister atque and uxor a wife muliebris semper are always feminine, et and arbor a tree; sed but cor a heart, marmor marble, ador corn, et and æquor the sea neutralia semper are always neuter. Sic so cos a whetstone est is fœminei generis of the feminine gender, dosque and a dowry, sed but os, seu whether oris habet it makes oris (meaning a face), sive ossis or ossis (meaning a bone,) erit will be neutrale neuter, chaosque and chaos, et and melos melody; atque alia and other words deducta derived a linguâ Pelasgâ from the Greek language. Tuber, fructus when meaning the fruit, mas est is masculine, sed but erit it will be muliebris feminine ut as arbor the tree: linter a boat communis is common; ver spring neutrum is neuter, so are verber a stripe, et and uber a teat, atque and cadaver a carcass, iter a journey, spinther a buckle, quibus adjice to which add tuber a mushroom, atque and quot nomina as many nouns as finita per er ending in er notant denote plantas plants. Excipias quoque you may except also, lector o reader, hyperdisyllabon a word of more than two syllables in do ending in do, et quot and as many words as io claudit ends, deducta being derived verbis from verbs; velut as libido lust, formidoque and fear; sic so dictio speaking, lectio reading; porro moreover caro flesh est is muliebris feminine, atque and echo echo,

atque *and* Argo *the Argo* et *and* imago *an image*; cupido *love* est *is* ritè *properly* muliebris *feminine*, cùm *when* notat *it speaks of* affectum *the passion*, et tamen *and yet* vates *poets* interdum *sometimes* cogunt hoc *press this* in mascula *into the list of masculines*. Disces *you will learn* pauca *that a few* finita per es *ending in es* scœminei generis *are of the feminine gender*, licet crescentia *although increasing in the genitive case*; merces *a fork-ful*, mercesque *and a reward*, quiesque *and rest*, et *and* teges *a mat*, atque *and* seges *a cornfield*; quadrupes *a quadruped* communis *is common*, et *and* ales *a bird*, atque *and* obses *a hostage*, comes *a companion*, atque *and* hospes *a host, or hostess*, quibus *to which* adice *add* princeps *a prince, or princess*. (v. 52—74.)

### VII. DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

Omne quod *every word which* exit in ends in as, is, ys, aus, x, es quoque *and es, quando when* non crescit *it does not increase* genitivo *in the genitive case*, erit *will be* muliebre *feminine*; superque *and moreover* s liquidâ præeunte *s when preceded by a liquid* præbet idem genus *gives the same gender*, memento *remember*; sic so pietas *piety*, fraus *fraud*, atque *and* chlamys *a cloak*, navisque *and a ship*, ratisque *and a ship*, pax *peace*, radix *a root*, nubes *a cloud*, et *and* hyems *winter*, mors *death*; excipe *except* pauca *a few*; as assis *a pound weight* mas erit *will be masculine*, compôstaque *and its compounds*; elephasque *and an elephant* mas *is masculine*, et *and* quicquid Græcum *whatever word originally Greek*, habet -antis *makes -ontis in the genitive*, ut as Atlas *Atlas*, atque *and* gigas *a giant*, adamas *adamant*, vas vadis *a surety*, e sensu *because of the sense*, est *mas is masculine*, vas vasis *a vessel*, neutrum *is neuter*; sic so fas *right* neutrale *is neuter*, nefasque *and wrong*. Videbis quoque *you will see also* multa *many nouns* is finita *ending in is* mascula *masculine*, pulvis *dust*, et *and* pollis *bran*, cucumis *a cucumber*, sanguis *blood*, lapis *a stone*, amnis *a river*, et *and* axis *an axletree*, glis *a dormouse*, caulis *a stalk*, cassis, cùm non crescit genitivo, *when, meaning a net, it does not increase in the genitive*, (cassis enim *for a helmet, à quo from which* cassidis venit *comes* est *is muliebre feminine*) collis *a hill*, fascis *a faggot*, follis *a bellows*, funis *a rope*, pestis *a plague*, et *and* ensis *a*

*sword*, ignis *fire*, panis *bread*, piscis *a fish*, postis *a door-post*, et and adjice add mensis *a month*, orbis *a world*, sentis *a thorn*, torris *a brand*, vectis *a lever*, vermis *a worm*, et and unguis *a talon*, natalis *a birth-day*; et and quæ words which rarius extant *are seldom found* numero primo *in the singular number*, annales *annals*, addeque and add molares *eye-teeth* rapidis jugalibus *to fleet carriage-horses*. Quinetiam moreover cernes *you will see* pauca *a few* communia *common*; canali *a channel*, et and scrobis *a ditch*, et and torquis *a chain*, callis *a path*, finis *an end*, cinis *ashes*, etsi although hæc duo *these two last* plurali *in the plural number* apparent tibi *are seen by you* tantum *mascula as masculine only*. Et quoniam and since nunc vir *sometimes a man*, nunc foemina *sometimes a woman* dicitur *is spoken of*, hostis *an enemy* est *is* commune genus *of the common gender*, civis *so is a citizen*, testis *a witness*, patruelis *a cousin*. Lex potior *a law of superior weight* est data *has been assigned* cur why Halys the river Halys exstet *mas is masculine*, et and Othrys mount Othrys. Es non crescens *es not increasing in the genitive* dat gives mascula nulla *no masculine nouns*, acinace dempto except a scimitar. At but vates a poet commune *is common*, vepres etiam also a bramble, atque and palumbes a dove.—Græca the words derived from Greek quæ which ax finit *end in ax* sunt *are* plurima mascula *mostly masculines*, thorax *a breast-plate*, et and cordax *a kind of dance*, anthrax *a coal*; sic so plurima many words quæ which ex claudit *ex ends*, qualis such as apex *a top*, codex *a book*, cimex *a bug*, cortexque and bark, culexque and a gnat, grex *a flock*, vertex *a top*, murex *a shell-fish*, pulex *a flea*, caudexque and a stool, silexque and flint.—Pauca a few per ix finita *ending in ix*, calix *a cup*, fornix *a vault*, ita so phoenix *a phoenix*, Græcaque and words derived from Greek in yx ending in yx, ut as onyx *an onyx*, et and oryx *an antelope*, bombyxque and a silkworm, calyxque and the cup of a flower; sic so quincunx *five ounces*, septunx *seven ounces*, et cætera and the rest of such words mascula *are masculine*; porro moreover adeps *fat*, dens *a tooth*, fons *a fountain*, mons *a mountain*, pons *a bridge*, mascula *are masculine*; hydropsque and the dropsy, chalybsque and steel, gryps *a griffin*, torrens *a torrent*, oriensque and the east, rudensque and a cable, bidensque and a sheep, tridensque and a trident; epopsque both a hoopoe meropsque and a woodpecker mascula *are*



*masculine, et and stirps a stock habetur is accounted communis common.* (v. 75—110.)

### VIII. DECLENSION III.—NEUTERS.

Quæ the nouns which a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us, claudunt end, leguntur are found in reading neutra to be neuter; vides you may see exempla examples; poema a poem. et and mare the sea, misy vitriol, sinapi mustard, alec pickle, lac milk, mel honey, animalque and an animal; carmen a verse et and adde add caput a head, laquear a ceiling, jecur the liver, adjice add tempus time. Sol the sun, mugil a mullet, mascula are masculine; sic so sal salt plerumque generally, pluralique and in the plural number sales wit semper always. Præsul a president et and exul an exile et and vigil a sentinel communia are common; fidicen a harpist, ren a kidney, pecten a comb, mascula are masculines; et and addas you may add paucissima a very few deducta derived a Græcâ linguâ from the Greek language, delphin a dolphin, lichen ringworm, et and pæan a song in honour of Apollo; primâque e lege and according to the first rule in the book, Cithæron mount Cithæron, sindon muslin, atque and icon an image, et and Amazon an Amazon, muliebria sunt are feminine; et and alcyones king-fishers, quæ which word rarius exstant is seldom found numero primo in the singular number. Par, significans meaning socium a mate, mas is masculine; turtur a turtle-dove mas is masculine, et and augur a soothsayer, fur a thief, vultur a vulture, sic so furfur bran: pauca a few in us ending in us muliebria are feminine, ut as virtus virtue, incus an anvil, tellus the earth, palus a marsh, atque and juvenus youth, atque and pecus a flock, making pecudis in the genitive case; dans when it makes pecoris meaning a herd accipe take it neutrum as neuter. (v. 111—125.)

### IX. DECLENSION IV.

U neutrum a noun ending in u is neuter, ut as cornu a horn; us a noun ending in us mas is masculine, ceu as cursus a course, et and actus an act of a play; porticus a portico, atque and tribus a tribe, muliebria are feminine, acusque and a needle, domusque and a house, et and manus a hand, et and

*quercus an oak, sic so idus the ides of the month cum quinquatribus and a feast in honour of Minerva called Quinquatrus; sensus the sense monstrat shows anus an old woman, nurus a daughter-in-law, et and socrus a mother-in-law muliebria to be feminine.*  
(v. 126—129.)

### X. DECLENSION V.

*Quinta the fifth declension dat gives muliebre genus the feminine gender, ut as spes hope; at but dies a day est is numero plurali in the plural number mas tantum masculine only; primo in the singular number commune it is common.*  
(v. 130, 131.)

### XI. ADJECTIVES.

**ADJECTIVA** *adjectives habentia having duntaxat only unam vocem one termination, ut as, felix happy, audax bold, retinent keep genus omne every gender sub unâ under that one ending. Si if cadunt they fall sub under geminâ voce a double termination, velut as, omnis, et and omne all, vox prior the former word est is commune duûm the common of two genders, vox altera the second word neutrum is neuter: at but si if variant they vary tres voces the three endings, ut as, sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred; vox prima the first word est is mas masculine, altera the second foemina feminine, tertia the third neutrum is neuter.*  
(v. 132—137.)

*Sunt queis there are some in which plurales casus the plural cases in a ending in a non adhibentur are not used, pauper poor, inops poor, puber of ripe age, sospes safe, cum with degener degenerate, uber fruitful, et and dives rich, locuples rich, memor mindful, immemor unmindful, atque and superstes surviving.*  
(v. 138—140.)

# NOUNS HETEROCLITE,

OR,

## IRREGULAR,

CONSTRUED.

**QUÆ** *those nouns which variant change genus their gender aut or flexum declension, quæcunque and whatsoever nouns novato ritu after a new manner deficient fall short ve or superant exceed in declining, sunt let them be called Heteroclita Heteroclites, or nouns irregular.* (v. 1, 2.)

**CERNIS** *you see hæc these nouns variantia varying genus the gender in variis numeris in the different numbers.* (v. 3.)

*Nam for hæc these words maria masculine primo numero in the singular number sunt neutra are neuter secundo in the plural: tartarus horribilis horrid hell; sic so sibilus a hiss, intubus endive, exstant are seen. At but jocus a jest addit utrumque genus adds both genders plurali numero to the plural number, et and locus a place:—hæc these words primo muliebria are feminine in the singular, neutra neuter secundo in the plural; Pergamos Troy, et and ostrea the oyster exquirenda to be sought lautis cœnis for rich suppers, carbasus and linen:—hæc these words habebunt will have neutrum the neuter gender primo in the singular number, mas the masculine altero in the other; et both siser a parsnip, et and cœlum heaven, Argosque and Argos amatum loved Junoni by Juno. Rastrum a rake exstat exists genere utroque in each gender plurali in the plural, et and frenum a bridle, quin moreover epulum a feast primo in the singular, ast but epulæ, leguntur is read plurale in the plural.* (v. 4—12.)

**PROPAGO** *the stock quæ which sequitur follows est is a nca defective casu in case, numerove or in number.* (v. 13.)

**HIS** neutris in these neuters poteris tu you will be able cernere to see nullos casus no cases, nisi except qui those which sunt tibi are, ut scis as you know, semper always idem the same in hoc genere in this gender. Hippomanes a humour in mares, cacoethes a bad habit, epos an epic poem, melos melody, adjice add gummi gum, et and fas right, mane the morning, nihil nothing, pondo weight, instar likeness; plurali in the plural, Tempe the vale of Tempe, grata pleasant perenni sub zephyro with perpetual zephyrs, tot so many, quot how many, et and omnes numeri all nouns of number à tribus from three ad centum to a hundred, quæ which vocantur are called aptota aptotes. (v. 14—19.)

**SUNT** quoque there are also nomina multa many nouns quæis to which rectus casus the nominative case abest is wanting, aut alii or other cases, deficientes deficient nullo certo ordine in no certain order, ut as fors chance, frugis corn, opis help, dapis a feast, et and vicis a turn, impetis violence, et and vis force, verberis a strike, et and fidis a lyre, atque and lues a plague, sordemque and dirt, vepremque and a bramble; quin moreover pauca a few videnda sunt are to be seen ablativo solo in the ablative case alone, ut sunt as are compede a fetter, fauce a jaw, prece prayer, atque and ambage a circuit; sed but omnia all these plerumque leguntur are generally found integra entire plurali numero in the plural number. Sic so jussu by order, natu by birth, permissu by leave, sponte of one's own accord, rogatu by asking, mandatu by command; sed his but to these et pluralis the plural also deficit is wanting, atque and plura quoque more also occurrent will occur tibi to you suo tempore quæque each in its good time. (v. 20—29.)

**Hæc** these words nunquam habebunt will never have pluralem numerum a plural number, nam for sensus the sense prohibet prevents it; cœnum mud, limus clay, sic so triticum wheat, et and aurum gold, argentum silver, et and paria similar words; his to these pietas piety addenda is to be added, pudorque and shame, et and sitis thirst, atque and fames hunger, infantia infancy, firma juvenus vigorous youth, atque and senectas gravis sad old age, vel or senectus, vox magis apta a better word; ver spring, vesper evening, letum death, specimen a specimen, victusque and food, supellexque and furni-

*ture, et and virus poison, sanguis blood, plebs the people, atque and ignobile vulgus the mean common people, cum paucis aliis with a few others; sic so nomina propria cuncta all proper names.* (v. 30—37.)

**MASCULA** *these masculines sunt are contenta confined numero secundo to the plural number tantum only, manes ghosts, majores ancestors, cancelli lattices, liberi children, et and antes the fore-ranks of vines, primores chiefs, proceres nobles, fasti simul also annals, atque and minores posterity, inferi the gods below, item also superi the gods above, lemures spectres, quibus to which adde add penates household gods, et and loca names of places plurali of the plural number, quales as que both Gabii a city in Italy que and Locri the inhabitants of Locris, et and quæcunque whatever nouns similis rationis of like nature legas you may read passim in authors.* (v. 38—43.)

*Hæc these nouns sunt are fœminei generis of the feminine gender, que and numeri secundi of the plural number; exuviæ anything stript off from the body, phaleræ horse-trappings, grates thanks, et and ineptiæ follies, et and idus the ides of a month, blanditiæ caresses, induciæ a truce, simul also que both insidiæ an ambush, que and minæ threats, excubiæ watch by day and night, nonæ the nones of a month, nugæ trifles, tricæque and toys, calendæ the calends of a month, quisquilæ the sweepings or refuse of any thing, thermæ a hot bath, cunæ a cradle, diræ curses, que and exequiæ funeral rites, feriæ holidays, et and inferiæ sacrifices performed to the dead, sic so primitiæque both the first fruits of the year, plagæque and nets. Deliciæ delight, tenebræque and darkness, et and valvæ folding-doors, divitiæque and riches, item also nuptiæ a marriage, et and lactes the small guts: Thebæ Thebes et and Athenæ Athens addantur may be added, quod genus of which sort invenias you may find et also nomina plura more names locorum of places.* (v. 44—52.)

*Hæc neutra these nouns neuter pluralia of the plural number leguntur are read rariùs seldom primo in the singular; mœnia the walls of a city, cum with tesquis rough and desert places, præcordia the midriff of the body, lustra the dens ferarum of wild beasts, arma arms, mapalia Numidian cottages, sic so bellaria junkets, munia an office or charge, castra a camp;*

*funus a funeral* petit requires *justa solemnities*, et *and* *virgo a virgin* petit requires *sponsalia espousals*; *disertus an eloquent man* amat loves *rostra the pulpit*, *puerique and children* gestant carry *crepundia rattles*, *infantesque and infants* colunt *cunabula lie in cradles*; *angur a soothsayer* consulit consults *exta the entrails*, *piæ puellæ pious maidens* connectunt weave *sacra sarta sacred garlands*. *Festa the feasts* deûm of the gods, *ceu as Bacchanalia feasts dedicated to Bacchus*, poterunt will be able *jungi to be joined*. Quòd si *and if* *leges you shall read* *plura more*, licet reponas *you may place them* quoque also *hâc classe in this rank*. (v. 53—61.)

Porro moreover invenies tu *you will find*, lector o reader, nomina pauca *a few nouns* secundæ of the second declension summentia taking etiam also quosdam casus some cases quartæ of the fourth, atque and præcipue particularly *dedignantia disdaining* fines is atque e the terminations is and e; ut as, *laurus a bay tree*, necnon and *figus a fig*, *domus a house*, atque *pinus and lofty pine*, et and *colus a distaff*, et and *cornus a cornel tree*, *cupressusque and the cypress* *invisa hated* *vivis by the living*. (v. 62—66.)

## AS IN PRÆSENTI, &amp;c.

OR,

## THE RULES FOR VERBS,

CONSTRUED.

I. AS in præsentī a verb making as in the present tense format forms perfectum the perfect tense in avi: ut as, no nas to swim navi, vocito vocitas to call often vocitavi. Deme except lavo to wash lavi, juvo to help juvi, quin moreover cubo to lie semper dat always makes cubui, seco to cut dat makes secui, mico to shine reddit gives micui, sic so frico to rub dat makes fricui, domo to tame dat makes domui, a from sono to sound sonui formatur is formed, tonoque and to thunder generabit will make tonui. Adde tibi add crepo to crack, quod which makes crepui, veto to forbid, quod which dat makes vetui. Interdum sometimes neco to kill dat makes necui, plerumque usually necavi, applico to apply sæpius dabit will oftener give applicui, rariùs more seldom -avi; at but supplico to supplicate multiplico to multiply semper formantur are always formed in -avi. Do das to give vult will formare form ritè by custom dedi, sto stas to stand steti. (v. 1—11.)

II. ES in præsentī a verb making es in the present tense format forms perfectum the perfect tense dans ui by ui; ut as nigreo nigres to grow black nigrui: moneo to advise dat makes monui, et and languéo to languish fugiens avoiding geminum u the double u habebit will have languui. Sed but ingenuus puer the well-bred boy videbit will see multa many words excipiēda to be excepted. Veo, fit becomes vi, ut as moveo to move movi, caveo quoque also to beware of cavi, ferveo item also to be hot habebit will have fervi, sed but sæpe often et also fervui. Fleo fles to weep dat makes flevi, neo to spin nevi, deleo to efface format forms deleui, exoleo to fade, et verbum simile omne and every similar word dat makes -evi. Compleo to fill format forms complevi, repleoque and to fill replevi;

cio *to summon* dat *makes* civi, sed *but* præteritum *the perfect* raro exstat *is seldom seen*. Plurima sunt *there are many verbs* quorum perfectum *whose perfect* desinit in si *ends in si*, ut as jubeo *to order* jussi, maneo *to remain* mansi, et *and* ardeo *to burn* arsi, mulceo *to soothe* mulsi, suadeo *to advise* suasi, rideo *to smile* risi, sic so hæreo *to stick* formabit *will form* hæsi, torqueo *to twist* torsi. (v. 12—25.)

Si if l vel r l or r stet *stands ante before* geo, geo vertitur *is changed* in si *into si*: ut as urgeo *to urge* ursi, mulgeo *to milk* mulsi, fulgeo *to shine* fulsi. Sunt etiam *there are some too* in deo *ending in deo* quæ *which* di dent *make di*, prandeo *to dine* prandi, et *and* video *to see*, sedeo *to sit*, assideo *to sit by*, sic so strideo *to hiss* stridi.—Quatuor *four* formantur *are formed* in xi *in xi*, sic so frigeo *to be cold* frixi, et *and* augeo *to increase* auxi, luceo *to shine* lugeo quoque *and to grieve* habent *have* luxi.—Syllaba prima *the first syllable* geminatur *is repeated* quatuor his infra *in these four verbs below*; namque *for* pendeo *to hang* vult *will have* pependi, mordeoque *and to bite* momordi, spondeo *to promise* spondendi, tondeo *to shear* vult habere *will have* totondi.—Tria verba *three verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam passivi solam *the form of the passive voice only*: gaudeo *to be glad* gavisus, soleo *to be accustomed* solitus, et *and* audeo *to dare* ausus; quin *moreover* pauca *a few* carent *want* perfecto *the perfect*, ut as mæreo *to grieve* monstrat *shows*, atque *and* aveo *to wish*, atque *and* hebeo *to be dull*, scateo *to be full*, vegeo *to be vigorous*, immineoque *and to impend*, atque *and* aliæ voces *other words* quas *which* usus practice rite docebit *will shew thoroughly*. (v. 26—39.)

III. TERTIA *the third conjugation* formabit *will form* præteritum *the perfect tense* ut as manifestum *is shewn* hic *here*. (v. 40.)

Bo fit *is made* psi, ceu as scribo *to write* scripsi, sed *but* bibo *to drink*, lambo *to lick*, et *and* scabo *to scratch*, faciunt *make* bi, quin *moreover* occumbo *to lie down* dat *makes* occubui. (v. 41, 42.)

Co fit *becomes* xi, ut as dico *to say* dixi, sed *but* parco *to spare* peperci, et *and* vinco *to conquer* vici, sic so ico *to strike*, vetus *an old word*, facit *makes* ici. (v. 43, 44.)



Sco fit *becomes* vi, ut *as* pasco *to feed* pavi; attamen *but* inde profectum *its compound* compesco *to check* format *forms* compescui, et *and* adice *add* disco *to learn* quod *which* semper *always* format *forms* didici, poscoque *and to ask* forms poposci.—Verba inceptiva *inceptive verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam *the form* simplicium *of the simple verbs from which they are derived*, nam *for* caleo *to be warm* format *forms* calui, calescoque *and to begin to be warm* makes also calui; glisco *to grow*, atque *and* fatisco *to split* jactant *boast of* perfectum nullum *no perfect tense*, cum paucis aliis *with a few others* rite profectis *regularly derived* a nomine *from a noun*.

(v. 45—51.)

Do fit *becomes* si, ut *as* claudio *to shut* clausi, cedo *to yield* geminans *s doubling the s* dat *makes* cessi; pauca *a few* dabunt *will make* di, ut *as* scando *to climb*, prehendo *to take*, accendo *to inflame*, cudo *to hammer*, mando *to eat*, defendo *to defend*, edo *to eat*, pando *to lay open*, et *and* strido *to creak*, sido *to sit*; findo *to cleave*, et *and* fundo *to pour* abjiciunt *n* throw away *n*, inde *thence* come fidi, fudi; rudo *to brag* dat *gives* rudivi, rarum *a rare form*: quinetiam *moreover* paucis *in a few words* syllaba prima *the first syllable* geminatur *is doubled*, pendo *to weigh* makes pependi, tendo *to bend* tetendi, cædo *to beat* cæcidi, et *and* cado *to fall* dat *gives* cæcidi, tundo *to beat*, tutudi; ultima vero *but the last syllable* plerumque *usually* geminatur *is doubled* in natis *in words compounded* a *of* do *to give*, ut *as* edo *to utter*, abdo *to hide*, condo *to build*, reddoque *and to restore*, et *and* cætera *the rest* formant *form* didi: videbis tamen *yet you will see* abscondo *that to hide* formare *forms* abscondi, fido *to trust* habebit *will have* formam *the form* passivi *of the passive*, fisis sum.

(v. 52—63.)

Go & is made xi, ut *as* jungo *to join* junxi; sed *but* r *the letter r ante* before go, vult *will have* si; ut *as* spargo *to sprinkle* sparsi; lego *to read* legi, et *and* ago *to act* facit *makes* egi; et *and* frango *to break* fregi, pango *pro for* figere *to fasten* panxi; inde tamen compôsta *but its compounds* semper tibi dabunt *will always give you* -pegi; cùm *when* cernis *you see* pepigi, præsens *the present tense* plerumque *usually* est *is* paciscor *to covenant*; tangoto *touch* dat *gives* tetigi, pungo *to prick* dabit *will give* ordine *in order* pupugi, sed *but* compôsta *its*

*compounds make -punxi; ambigo to doubt, vergo to incline, carent are without perfecto the perfect tense.* (v. 64—70.)

Guo, format tibi *forms xi; ceu as restinguo to extinguish restinxi.* (v. 71.)

Ho, fit is made xi; ceu as traho to draw traxi docet *shews, et and veho to carry vexi.* (v. 72.)

Lo, fit is made ui; ceu as colo to till colui: excipe *except psallo to play upon an instrument psalli; excello to excel sequitur follows legem the regular rule, sed but percello to strike habebit will have perculi; pello to drive away dat makes pepuli, fallo to deceive fefelli, vello to pluck dat tibi gives you sæpius usually velli, est ubi sometimes vulsi.* (v. 73—76.)

Mo, fit becomes mpsi; ceu as como to deck the hair compsi, at but emo to buy facit *makes emi. Deinde then vomoque both to vomit, fremoque and to roar, gemoque and to groan, tremoque and to tremble sequuntur follow; quæ which dabunt will give perfecta their perfects per ui in ui; et and premo to press dabit will give pressi.* (v. 77—79.)

No, fit becomes vi; ceu as sino to permit sivi; quin moreover cerno to see ordine mutato *changing the order of its letters makes crevi, sic so does sperno to despise, sternoque and to strew makes stravi, gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini; cujus compôsta whose compounds dant ui make ui, ut as concino to sing together concinui.* (v. 80—83.)

Po, fit becomes psi; ut as sculpo to carve sculpsi, carpo quoque also to gather makes carpsi; sed but rumpo to break semper always format *makes rupi, strepo to roar strepui.*

(v. 84, 85.)

Quo, fit becomes xi; ceu as coquo to cook coxi, excipe *except linquo to leave liqui.* (v. 86.)

Ro, fit becomes si, sæpe s geminato s *being often doubled, quod which gero to carry monstrat shews, dans making gessi; tero to rub dat makes trivi, curroque and to run makes curri, quæro to seek quæsivi, neque enim nor let fero to bear prætereatur be passed over, quod which habet has tuli, sero to sow dat makes sevi, sed but compôsta ejus its compounds in-sero to ingraft or insert among, consero to plant together or to connect, dant make et both -sevi et and -serui, formâ the form*

*mutatâ varying ad sensum with the sense; sed but desero to desert item also assero to assert formant form ui tantum only ui; furo to rage dat gives nullum præteritum no perfect tense.*  
(v. 87—93.)

So, fit becomes si; ut as viso to go to see visi; adjice add pinso to grind pinsi, item also making pinsui; depresso quoque also to knead depressui; at but omne -esso every word ending in -esso dat gives -essivi, ut as arcesso to send for, incesso to attack, atque and lacesso to provoke probat proves.

(v. 94—96.)

To, fit is made ti; ut as verto to turn verti; sic so verso ordine changing the order of the letters obstiti fluit proceeds ab from obsisto to oppose, adde add insisto to stand upon, resisto to resist; mitto to send dat gives misi, peto to ask vult formare will form petivi, sterto to snore habet has stertui, meto to reap messui: ab from -ecto fit is made -exi, ut as flecto to bend flexi; necto to weave dat gives nexui, habetque and it has nexi, sic so pecto to comb dat gives pexui, habet quoque and also has pexi.

(v. 97—102.)

Vo, fit is made vi; ut as volvo to roll volvi; excipe except vivo to live vixi.

(v. 103.)

Xo, habet has xui; ut as texo to weave, quod which habebit will have texui, monstrat sheweth.

(v. 104.)

Cio, fit is made ci; ut as facio to do feci; quoque also jacio to cast jeci: allicio to allure allexi, elicio to elicit format tibi gives you elicui. Aspicio to behold makes aspexi, sic so conspicio to see inspicioque and to inspect.

(v. 105—107.)

Dio, fit is made di; ut as fodio to dig fodi.

Gio, fit is made gi; ceu as fugio to fly fugi. } (v. 108.)

Pio, fit is made pi; ut as capio to take cepi; ecce behold cupio to desire cupivi, et and rapio to snatch rapui, sapio to savour or taste sapui, atque and sapivi.

(v. 109, 110.)

Pario to bring forth dat gives peperui, concutio to shake dat gives concussi.

(v. 111.)

Denique finally, Uo fit is made ui; ut as statuo to erect statui; pluo to rain format formeth pluvi, sive or plui, sed but struo to build makes struxi, fluo to flow fluxi.

(v. 112, 113.)

Compositum the compound verb sequitur follows simplex

*the simple one, sed but semper always syllaba a syllable quam which simplex the simple verb geminat redoubles non geminatur is not doubled compōsto in the compound.*

(v. 114, 115.)

IV. QUARTA *the fourth conjugation dat makes is in the present tense, ivi in the preterperfect; ut as scio scis to know, scivi, monstrat tibi shews you. Excipias you may except venio to come dans making veni, raucio to be hoarse rausi, item also haurio to draw hausi, farcio to stuff farsī, fulcio to prop fulsi, sarcio to patch sarsi, sentio to feel sensi, sepio to hedge sepsi, sancio to establish sanxi, vincio to bind vinxi; tum then tria verba three verbs formantur are formed per ui in ui, salio to leap, aperio to open, operioque and to cover; comperio to find mutat changes rio, in ri into rī, reperioque and to find; ferio to strike atque and superbio to be proud præbent afford perfectum nullum no perfect tense.*

(v. 116—123.)

V. VERBA hæc simplicia *these simple verbs, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense præteritique and of the perfect tense in e into e; damno to condemn, lacto to suckle, sacro to dedicate, fallo to deceive, arceo to drive away, tracto to handle, fatiscor to be weary, cando to burn, (vetus an old word) capto to lie in wait, jacto to throw, patior to suffer, gradiorque and to step, partio to divide, carpo to crop, patro to achieve or finish, scando to climb, sic so farcio to stuff, spargo to sprinkle.*

(v. 124—128.)

VI. HÆC *these verbs, habeo to have, lateo to lie hid, salio to leap, statuo to erect, cado to fall, lædo to hurt, tango to touch, cano to sing, placeo to please, teneo to hold, sic so cædo cecidi to beat, quæro to seek, egeo to want, fateor to confess, taceo to hold one's peace, sapio to savour, rapioque and to snatch, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel in i into i; ut as, rapio to snatch, eripio to take away by force.*

(v. 129—133.)

Sed but hæc duo *these two compounds, complaceo to please, cum with perplaceo to please very much, benè servant steadily keep usum the use simplicis verbi of the simple verb.*

(v. 133, 134.)

Composita the compounds à of verbis the verbs calco to tread, salto to leap or dance, mutant change a per u a into u; conculco to tread upon, inculco to tread in, resulto to rebound, demonstrant shew id that tibi to you. (v. 135, 136.)

Composita the compounds à of claudio to shut, quatio to shake, lavo to wash, rejiciunt a cast away a; ocludo to shut against, excludo to shut out, à from claudio to shut, docet teaches id this; que and percutio to strike, excutio to strike out, à from quatio to shake; à from lavo to wash, nata the compounds proluo to drench, diluo to wash out. (v. 137—139.)

Plaudo to applaud mutat changes au into o, quod which displodo to burst monstrat tibi shews you. (v. 140.)

VII. SI if componas you compound hæc these verbs, ago to act, emo to buy, sedeo to sit, rego to rule, frango to break, et and capio to take, jacio to cast, lacio to allure, specio to behold, premo to press, pango to fasten, sibi mutant they change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense in i into i, nunquam never præteriti of the perfect tense; ceu as of frango to break, refringo to break open, makes refregi; incipio to begin incepti, à of capio to take: sed but pauca let a few notentur be marked; namque for perago to finish sequitur follows suum simplex its simple verb, que and satago to be busy; atque and dego to live, ab from ago to act, dat makes degi, cogo to bring together coëgi; sic so à from rego to rule, pergo to go forward, makes perrexī, quoque and surgo to rise vult will have surrexi; mediâ syllabâ the middle syllable præsentis of the present tense adeptâ being taken away. (v. 141—149.)

Ista quatuor composita these four compound verbs à of pango to fix or fasten retinent a keep a, depango to fix in the ground, oppango to fasten against, circumpango to fasten about, atque and repango to fasten again. (v. 150, 151.)

Facio to do variat changeth nil nothing, nisi unless præposito præeunte a preposition goes before: olfacio to smell out docet teaches id that, cum with calfacio to make hot, que and inficio to infect. (v. 152, 153.)

Nata the compounds à of lego to read, re, per, præ, sub,

trans, ad, præeunte *going before*, servant *keep* vocalem the vowel præsentis of the present tense; cætera the rest mutant change it in *i* into *i*; de quibus of which hæc these tantum only, intelligo to understand, diligo to love, negligo to neglect, faciunt make præteritum their perfect tense lexi; reliqua omnia all the rest legi. (v. 154—157.)

VIII. NUNC now discas you may learn formare to form supinum the supine ex præterito from the perfect tense.

(v. 158.)

Unum perfectum one perfect tense in bi, bibi to drink, vult formare will form bibitum. (v. 159.)

Ci, fit is made ctum, ut as vici to overcome victum, testatur shews, et and ici to smite dans making ictum, feci to do factum, quoque also jeci to cast jactum. (v. 160-1.)

Di, fit is made sum; ut as vidi to see visum: quædam some geminant s double s; ut as pandi to open passum, sedi to sit sessum, adde add scidi to cut quod which dat makes scissum, atque and fidi to cleave fissum, quoque also fodi to dig fossum. (v. 162—164.)

Prima syllaba the first syllable non geminatur is not doubled ullis supinis in any supines: idque and this totondi to clip or shear, dans making tonsum, docet shews, atque and cecidi to beat, quod which maketh cæsum, et and cecidi to fall, quod which dat maketh casum, atque and tetendi to bend, quod which maketh tensum, et also tentum, tutudi to beat or pound tunsum, atque and dedi to give, quod which jure by right poscit requires datum, sic so quot as many as nascuntur are derived ab illo from it, ut as addidi to add habet has additum, atque and momordi to bite vult will have morsum.

(v. 165—170.)

Gi, fit is made ctum; ut as legi to read lectum; pegi to fasten que and pepigi to covenant dant make pactum, fregi to break fractum, quoque also tetigi to touch tactum, egi to act actum, pupugi to prick punctum; fugi to flee dat makes fugitum. (v. 171—173.)

Li, fit becomes sum; ut as pepuli to drive away pulsum; sic so rite regularly fefelli to deceive falsum, perculi to strike habet has perculsum, neve and let not tuli to bear aufugiat te

*escape you, cui in the case of which word* latum, *semper always* venit *has come in* usum *into use.* (v. 174—176.)

Mi, ni, pi, qui, sumunt *take* tam, *velut as* manifestum *is* manifest *hic here*: emi *to buy* emptum, veni *to come* ventum, cecini, à *from* cano *to sing* cantum, cepi, à *from* capio *to take* captum, quoque *also* cœpi *to begin* cœptum, rupi, à *from* rumpo *to break* ruptum; quoque *also* liqui *to leave* lictum. (v. 177—180.)

Ri, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* verri *to brush* versum; excipe *except* peperi *to bring forth* partum. (v. 181.)

Si, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* visi *to go to see* visum; quin *moreover* misi *to send* formabit *will form* missum, ss *geminato s being doubled*; excipe *except* fulsi *to prop* fultum, hausi *to draw* haustum, sarsi *to patch* sartum, quoque *also* farsi *to stuff* fartum, ussi *to burn* ustum, gessi *to bear* gestum; torsi *to wreath* vindicat *sibi claims for itself* tortum, sic *so* indulsi *to indulge* format *tibi forms as you see* indultum. (v. 182—186.)

Psi, fit *is made* ptum; ut *as* scripsi *to write* scriptum, quoque *also* sculpsi *to engrave* sculptum. (v. 187.)

Ti, vult *formare will form* sum; ut *as* verti *to turn* versum; cum *when* -stiti *habet has* supinum *a supine* erit *it will be* -statum, sed *but* vix *valebis you will scarcely be able* reperire *to find it.* (v. 188, 189.)

Vi, fit *is made* tum; ut *as* flavi *to blow* flatum: excipe *except* pavi *to feed* cattle pastum; lavi *to wash* dat *makes* lotum, interdum *sometimes* lautum, atque *and* lavatum; potavi *to drink* facit *makes* potum, venivi *a from* veneo *to be sold* venum; favi *to savour* dat *makes* fautum, cavi *to beware* cautum; à *from* sero *sevi to sow* ritè *formes you may rightly* form satum; discere *learn*, sepelivi *to bury* sepultum, et *and* singultivi *to sob* semper *habebit will always have* singultum; solvi, à *from* solvo *to loose* solutum, volvi, à *from* volvo *to roll* volutum. (v. 190—196.)

Quod *a verb that* dat *makes* ui, dat *makes* itum; ut *as* domui *to tame* domitum: excipe *except* quodvis *verbum every verb* in uo, quia *because* semper *formabit it will always* form ui in utum *ui in utum*; ut *as* exui *to put off* exutum: deme *except* rui, à *from* ruo *to rush*, dans *making* ruitum; secui *to*

*cut* vult *will have* sectum, necui *to slay* nectum, que *and* fricui *to rub* frictum, item *also* miscui *to mingle* mistum, quoque *also* docui *to teach* doctum; torrui *to roast* habet hath tostum, adjiceque *and add* continui *to contain* contentum, consului *to consult* consultum, alui *to feed* altum, que *and* alitum; sic *so* salui *to leap* saltum, colui *to till*, quoque *also* occului *to hide*, cultum; pinsui *to pound or grind* habet hath pistum, rapui *to snatch* raptum, que *and* serui, à *from* sero *to set in order*, vult *will have* sertum, sic *so* quoque *also* texui *to weave* habet hath textum. (v. 197—206.)

Censui *to judge* habet hath censum, messui *to reap* habebit *will have* quoque *also* messum; item *also* nexui *to knit* nexum, sic *so* quoque *also* pexui *to comb* habet hath pexum. (v. 207, 208.)

Xi, fit *is made* ctum; ut *as* vinxi *to bind* vinctum: quædam *some* abjiciunt *n* *cast away* *n*; ut *as* finxi *to form or fashion* semper dabit *will always give* fictum, adjice *add* pinxi *to paint* dans *giving* pictum, strinxi *to bind fast* strictum, quoque *also* rinxi *to grin* rictum. (v. 209—211.)

Flexi *to bend*, plexi *to twist*, fixi *to fasten*, dant *make* xum *et and* fluo *to flow* fluxum. (v. 212.)

IX. QUODQUE compositum supinum *every compound supine* formatur *is formed* ut *as* simplex *the simple* supine, quamvis *although* eadem syllaba *the same syllable* non stet *does not continue* semper *always* utrique *to them both*. Composita *the compounds* à *of* tunsum *to pound*, *n* demptâ *by taking away* *n*, make tusum; à *of* ruitum *to rush*, *i* mediâ *the middle letter* *i* demptâ *being taken away*, fit *is made* rutum; et *and* quoque *also* à *of* saltum *to leap* sultum. Composita *the compounds* à *of* sero *to sow*, quando *when* format *it forms* satum, dant *make* situm. (v. 213—217.)

Hæc *these* supines, captum *to take*, factum *to do*, jactum *to cast*, raptum *to snatch*, mutant *a* *per e* *change a into e*; et *and* cantum *to sing*, partum *to bring forth* young, sparsum *to sprinkle*, carptum *to crop*, adjice *add* fartum *to stuff*. (v. 218, 219.)

A *from* nosco *to know* duo *these two* compounds tantum



*only*, cognitum *to know* et *and* agnitum *to know again*, habentur *are found*; cætera *the rest* dant *make* notum: noscitum, jam *now* est *is* nullo in usu *not in use*. (v. 220, 221.)

X. VERBA in or *verbs ending in or* admittunt *take* præteritum *their perfect tense* ex posteriore supino *from the latter supine*, u verso *u being turned* per us *into us*, et *and* sum, vel or fui, consociato *being added*; ut *as* à of lectu *to be read* lectus sum, vel or fui, *I have been read*: at but horum of *these verbs* nunc *sometimes* est *there is* deponens *a deponent*, nunc *sometimes* est *there is* commune *a common* notandum *to be noted*. (v. 222—225.)

Nam *for* labor *to slide* dat *makes* lapsus; patior *to suffer* passus, et *and* ejus natum *its compound* perpetior *to endure*, formans *forming* perpassus; fateorque *and to own* dat *makes* fassus, confiteor *to confess* confessus, gradiorque *and to step* dat *makes* gressus, metior *to measure* dat *gives* mensus sum, et *and* utor *to use* usus. (v. 226—229.)

Ordior, pro *for* texo *to weave* dat *makes* orditus, pro *for* incepto *to begin* orsus, nitor *to strive* nisus, vel or nixus sum, et *and* ulciscor *to revenge* ultus, simul also irascor *to be angry* iratus, atque *and* reor *to suppose* ratus sum, obliviscor *to forget* vult *will have* oblitus sum, fruor *to enjoy* optat *chooseth* fructus, vel or fruitus; junge *add* misereri *to have pity* misertus, atque *and* miseritus; a *from* tuor *to see* et *and* tueor *to defend* tutus, que *and* tuitus; adde *add* locutus, à of loquor *to speak*, et *and* adde *add* secutus, à of sequor *to follow*. (v. 230—236.)

Experior *to try* facit *maketh* expertus; paciscor *to make a bargain* gaudet *will* formare *form* pactus sum, nanciscor *to get* nactus, apiscor *to obtain*, (quod *which* est *is* vetus verbum *an old verb*) aptus sum, undè *from whence* adipiscor *to get* adeptus. (v. 237—239.)

Junge *add* queror *to complain* questus, junge *add* proficiscor *to go* profectus, expergiscor *to awake* experrectus sum; et *and* quoque also hæc *these*, comminiscor *to devise* commentus, nascor *to be born* natus, moriorque *and to die* mortuus, atque *and* orior *to rise*, quod *which* facit *makes* præteritum *its perfect tense* ortus. (v. 240—243.)

Medeor *to remedy*, vescor *to feed upon*, liquorque *and to*

*melt* carebunt *will want* perfecto *the perfect tense* ; sic quoque *so also* diffiteor *to disown*, sic *so* ringor *to grin*, sic *so* reminiscor *to remember*.  
(v. 244, 245.)

XI. HÆC *these verbs* habent *have* præteritum *a perfect tense* activæ *of the active* et *and* passivæ *vocis of the passive* voice.  
(v. 246)

Nubo *to be married* nupsi, que *and* nupta sum, placeo *to please* dat *gives* placui et *and* placitus, et *and* libet it *plenseth* libuit libitum, et *and* adde *add* licet it *is lawful*, quod *which* makes licuit licitum ; tædet it *wearieth*, quod *which* dat *makes* tæduit, et *and* pertæsum ; adde *add* pudet it *shameth* faciens *making* puduit, que *and* puditum, atque *and* piget it *grieveth*, quod *which* tibi *format* forms you piguit, que *and* pigitum.  
(v. 247—251.)

XII. HÆC verba *these verbs* rarò *seldom* aut *or* nunquam *never* retinebunt *will have* supinum *their supine* : lambo *to lick*, mico micui *to glitter*, rudo *to bray as an ass*, scabo *to claw*, parco peperci *to spare*, dispesco *to drive from pasture*, posco *to require*, compesco *to restrain*, atque *and* adjice *add* disco *to learn*, dego *to live*, ango *to throttle*, sugo *to suck*, lingo *to lick*, ningo *to snow*, que *and* satago *to be busy*, psallo *to play on an instrument*, volo *to be willing*, nolo *to be unwilling*, malo *to be more willing*, tremo *to tremble*, strideo strido *to scream*, flaveo *to be yellow*, liveo *to be black and blue*, avet *to covet*, paveo *to dread*, conniveo *to wink*, fervet *to be hot*. Compositum *a compound* à *of* nuo *to nod* ; ut *as*, renuo *to refuse* : à *of* cado *to fall* ; ut *as*, accido *to happen* ; præter *except* occido *to fall down*, quod *which* facit *makes* occasum, que *and* recido *to fall back* recasum : respuo *to refuse*, sic *so* metuo *to fear*, cluo *to shine or to be famous* frigeo *to be cold*, calveo *to be bald*, sterto *to snore*, sic etiam *so also* timeo *to fear* ; sic *so* luceo *to shine*, et *and* arceo *to drive away*, cujus composita *whose compounds* habent *have* -ercitum ; sic *so* nata *the compounds* à *of* gruo *to cry like crane*, ut *as* ingruo *to invade* ; et *and* quæcunque neutra *whatever neuters* secundæ *of the second conjugation* formantur *are formed* in ui ; excipias *you may except* oleo *to smell*, dolo

*to be in pain, placeo to please, que and taceo to hold one's peace, pareo to obey, item also careo to want, noceo to hurt, jaceo to lie down, que and lateo to lie hid, et also valeo to be in health, caleo to be hot ; namque for hæc these verbs gaudent supino have their supines.* (v. 252—266.)

## SYNTAXIS CONSTRUED.

1. VERBUM personale *a verb personal* concordat *agrees* cum nominativo *with its nominative case* numero *in number* et *and* personâ *person* : ut *as*, Ego loquor *I speak*. Homineo *men* audiunt *hear*.

2. Nominativus *the nominative case* pronominum *of pronouns* omittitur *is omitted*, nisi *unless* gratiâ *for the sake* distinctionis *of distinction*, aut *or* emphasis *energy of expression* : ut *as*, Ego *I* ejeci *drove out* reges *kings*, vos *ye* introducitis *are introducing* tyrannos *tyrants*. Auditis *do ye* hear, an *or* amabilis *insania* *does a pleasing delusion* ludit *me* deceive *me*? Videor *I seem* audire *to hear* et *and* errare *to be* wandering *per* among *pios lucos* *holy groves*. Possunt *they* are *able* quia *because* videntur *they seem to themselves* posse *to be able*.

3. Aliquando *sometimes* verbum *a verb* infinitivi *modi* of *the infinitive mood* usurpatur *is used* pro nominativo *for the nominative* vel *or* pro *for* accusativo *casu* *the accusative case* nominis *of a noun* : ut *as*, Didicisse *to have learnt* ingenuas *artes* *the liberal sciences* fideliter *thoroughly* emollit *softens* much *mores* *men's manners*, nec *sinit* *and suffers* them *not esse* *to be* feros *brutal*. Quod *crimen* *what crime* dicis *do you say* meum *is mine*, præter *except* amâsse *to have loved*?

4. Cùm *when* duo *sunt* nomina *there are two nouns* diversarum personarum *of different persons*, verbum *the verb* concordat *agrees* cum *with* personâ *digniore* *the more worthy person* : ut *as*, Si *if* tu *you* et *and* Tullia *Tullia* valetis *are well* ego *I* et *and* suavissimus *Cicero* *our dearest Cicero* valemus *are well*.

5. Cùm *when* unum *verbum* *one verb* sequitur *follows* duo *aut* *plura* nomina *two or more nouns* singularis *numeri* *of the singular number*, plerumque *usually* ponitur *it is put* in plurali *in the plural*, si *if* agitur *one is speaking* de animantibus *of living objects*, si *if* de rebus *one is speaking of things*, vel *in plurali* *the verb is put either in the plural* vel *in singulari* *or in the singular* : ut *as*, Castor *et* *and* Pollux *visi sunt* *were seen* pugnare *to fight* ex equis *on horseback* apud *Regillum* *at luke Regillus*. Cùm *when* tempus *the occasion* necessitasque *and necessity* postulat *requires*, decertandum *est* *one must fight* manu *with one's own hand*. Beneficium *kindness* et *and* gratia *gratitude* conjungunt *join* homines *men* inter *se* together

6. *Cùm when nomen a noun singularis numeri of the singular number indicat denotes multitudinem a multitude, sæpe jungitur it is often joined verbo plurali to a plural verb : ut as, Turba the crowd tenent occupy atria the halls, leve vulgus the fickle mob veniunt come euntque and go. Uterque eorum each of them educunt draw out exercitum their army ex castris from the camp.*

(a.) Sic so et also adverbium the adverb partim partly aliquando sometimes usurpatur is used cum with genitivo plurali nominis the genitive plural of the noun, ceu as nomen ipsum the noun itself: ut as, Partim eorum part of them sunt are timidi cowardly, partim part aversi disaffected a republicâ to the republic. Partim eorum part of these things ficta sunt aperte were openly invented, partim part effutita uttered temere at random.

7. Verbum a verb positum placed inter between duos nominativos two nominative cases ejusdem personæ of the same person sed but diversorum numerorum of different numbers potest concordare may agree cum with alterutro either, sed but fere usually concordat does agree cum posteriore with the latter: ut as, Iræ the quarrels amantium of lovers integratio est are the renewing amoris of love. Pectus quoque her breast also fiunt roborâ becomes oak. Omnia everything pontus erant was sea.

8. Pro nominativo instead of a nominative case accusativus an accusative sequitur follows verba verbs dicendi of saying, audiendi of hearing, sciendi of knowing, putandi of thinking, et similia and the like, et verbum sum and the verb sum, verbo infinitivo a verb in the infinitive mood sequente following: ut as, Audivit he heard nos that we venire were coming. Scribit he writes word bellum that the war confectum esse is finished. Fama est a report exists Enceladum that Enceladus urgeri is overwhelmed mole hâc by this mass.

(a.) Infinitivus modus the infinitive mood futuri temporis of the future tense plerumque generally sequitur follows verba verbs sperandi of hoping et and promittendi of promising: ut as, Promitto I promise me that I observaturum esse will observe hæc these things. Spero I hope fore ut contingat id that that will happen nobis to us.

9. ADJECTIVA adjectives, participia participles, et and pronomina pronouns, concordant agree cum with substantivo

*the substantive genere in gender, numero in number, et and casu in case : ut as, Rara avis an uncommon bird in terris in the world, simillimaque and very much like nigro cygno a black swan.*

10. *Cum when verbum a verb infinitivi modi of the infinitive mood, aut or pars sententiæ part of a sentence usurpatur is used pro substantivo instead of a substantive, habetur it is considered neutrius generis of the neuter gender : ut as, Irasci to be angry est is humanum a human error.*

11. *Cum when plura sunt substantiva there are many substantives diversorum generum of different genders, adjectivum the adjective concordat agrees cum with digniore genere the more worthy gender, si if agitur one is speaking de animantibus of living objects, et and si if ponitur it is put in numero plurali in the plural number : ut as, Pater mihi my father et mater and mother mortui sunt have been dead jampridem long since.*

12. *Si vero but if agitur de rebus things are spoken of, adjectivum the adjective sæpe ponitur is often put in neutro in the neuter gender : ut as, Secundæ res prosperity, honores honours, imperia commands, victoriæ victories, fortuita sunt depend on chance.*

(a.) *Interdum sometimes adjectivum the adjective concordat agrees cum proximo substantivo with the nearest substantive cujuscunque generis sit of whatever gender it is, præsertim especially cum when ponitur it is put in singulari numero in the singular number : ut as, Animus the intention, et and consilium the purpose, et and sententia the opinion civitatis of the state posita est have been expressed in legibus in the laws.*

13. *Aliquando sometimes adjectivum the adjective concordat agrees cum substantivo with a substantive quod which significatur is implied, non cum eo not with that quod which exprimitur is expressed : ut as, Auxilia Thracum the auxiliary force of the Thracians, cum as pars part adjacerent lay close munitionibus to the fortifications, cæsi sunt were slain.*

14. *Aliquando sometimes nullum substantivum no substantive exprimitur is expressed, sed but adjectivum the adjective usurpatur is used pro substantivo for a substantive : ut as, Loquor I am saying mira strange things. Multi many men libenter willingly oppetierunt mortem have sought death pro patriâ for their country.*

15. **RELATIVUM** *the relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* antecedente *the antecedent* genere *in gender*, numero *in number*, et *and* personâ *in person* : ut *as*, Ego sum *I am* ille consul *that consul* qui *who* servavi *saved* Romam *Rome*. Contemnimus *we despise* hominem *a man* qui *who* amat *loves* mendacia *lies*.

16. Quoniam *since* relativum *the relative* adjectivum est *is an adjective*, sequitur *it follows* easdem leges *the same laws* de genere *as to gender* quas *as* adjectivum *an adjective* : ut *as*, Eæ fruges *these crops* atque fructus *and fruits* quos *which* terra *the earth* gignit *produces*. Duo importuna prodigia *the two prodigies of wickedness* quos *whom* improbitas *their profligacy* addixerat constrictos *had bound* tribuno plebis *to the tribune of the people*. Ubi est *where is* illud scelus *that wicked man* qui *who* perdidit me *has undone me*?

17. Aliquando *sometimes* sententia *a sentence* aut *or* pars sententiæ *part of a sentence* ponitur *is put* pro *for* antecedente *an antecedent* : ut *as*, Veni *I came* ad eam *to her* in tempore *in season*, quod *which* est *is* rerum omnium primum *the main business of all*.

18. Relativum *a relative* collocatum *placed* inter *between* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversorum generum *of different genders* et *and* numerorum *numbers* concordat *agrees* sæpe *often* cum *with* posteriore *the latter* substantive : ut *as*, Homines *men* tuentur *regard* illum globum *that globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth*.

(a.) Relativum *a relative* sæpe ponitur *is often put* Latinè *in Latin* ubi *where* in nostro sermone *in our language* utimur *we use* pronomine *a pronoun* cum conjunctione *with a conjunction* : ut *as*, Si *if*, pater *O father*, scïsses *you had known* hoc *this*, cujus pietatis es *such is your piety*, nemo *no one* antecessisset te *would have outdone you*. Et tamen *and yet*, quæ jam patientia nostra est *so great is our patience*, spernimur *we are despised* in cœlo *in heaven*. Pater tuus si viveret *if your father were alive*, quâ severitate fuit *such was his severity*, tu profecto *you in truth* non viveres *would not be alive*. Jussit hoc *he ordered this*, quod si fecissem *but if I had done it* perdidissem *I should have ruined* omnia *every thing*.

19. Aliquando *sometimes* relativum *a relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* primitivo *the primitive*, quod *which* subauditur *is understood* in possessivo *in the possessive* : ut *as*, Hoc *this* maxime interest vestrâ *is of the greatest consequence to you*, qui *who* vixistis *have lived* cum summâ integritate *with the greatest integrity*.

(a.) Cum *when* relativum *the relative* refertur *is referred* ad nomen *to a noun* multitudinis *of multitude*, aliquando *sometimes* ponitur *it is put* in plurali *in the plural* : ut *as*, Cæsar *Cæsar* præmittit *sends on* omnem equitatum *all the cavalry* qui videant *to see* quas in partes *in which direction* hostes *the enemy* iter faciant *is marching*.

20. Si *if* nominativus *a nominative case* interponatur *is p* between relativo *the relative* et *and* verbo *the verb*, relativu *the relative* regitur *is governed* a verbo *by the verb*, aut *or* a aliâ dictione *by some other word* quæ *which* locatur *is placed* in oratione *in the sentence* cum verbo *with the verb* : ut *as*, Peto *I demand* te *you* quem *whom* merui *I have deserved*. Cujus numen *whose deity* adoro *I adore*.

(a.) Cùm *when* relativum *the relative* adjungitur *is joined* superlativo *to an adjective in the superlative degree*, superlativum *the superlative* ponitur *is put* in eodem sententiæ membro *in the same member of the sentence* quo *as* relativum *the relative* : ut *as*, Themistocles *Themistocles* misit *sent* servum quem fidelissimum habuit *the most faithful slave he had* ad Xerxem *to Xerxes*.

21. DUO substantiva *two substantives* rei ejusdem *meaning the same thing* ponuntur *are put* in eodem casu *in the same case* : ut *as*, Opes *riches* effodiuntur *are dug up*, irritamenta *the incentives* malorum *to evil*.

22. Quum *when* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversæ significationis *of a different signification* concurrunt *meet together*, posterius *the latter* ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive case* : ut *as*, Amor *the love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases* quantum *as much as* ipsa pecunia *the money itself* crescit *increases*.

23. Adjectivum *an adjective* in neutro genere *of the neuter gender* positum *put* pro substantivo *instead of a substantive*, postulat *requires* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut *as*, Dedi *I wrote* hoc literarum *this letter* ad te *to you*. Venerant *they had come* ad extremum *to the extremity* inopiæ *of want*. Ferimur *we are borne on* per opaca locorum *through shady places*.

24. Interdum *sometimes* genitivum *a genitive case* ponitur tantum *is set alone*, priore substantivo *the former substantive* subaudito *being understood* per ellipsin *by the figure ellipsis* :



ut *as*, Ventum erat *we had come* ad Vestæ to the temple of Vesta. Hasdrubal *Hasdrubal* Gisgonis the son of Gisgo.

25. Substantivum *a substantive* denotans *denoting* qualitatem *quality*, adjuncto *adjective* *if an adjective be added*, ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive* vel *or* in ablativo *in the ablative*: ut *as*, Titus Titus fuit *was* tantæ facilitatis *of such great kindness*, ut *that* negaret quicquam nemini *he never denied anything to any one*. Agesilaus Agesilaus fuit *was* staturâ humili *of low stature* et corpore exiguo *and of a slight body*.

(a.) Substantiva *substantives* derivata a verbis *derived from verbs* interdum *sometimes* admittunt *admit* eosdem casus *the same cases* post se *after them* quos *as* verba *the verbs* exigunt *require* a quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived*: ut *as*, Spe *all* hope reditionis *of a return* domum *home* sublatâ *being taken away*. Justitia *justice* est *is* obtemperatio *obedience* scriptis legibus *to written laws*.

26. Opus *need* et *and* usus *need* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case* rei *of the thing*, cum dativo *with a dative* personæ *of the person*: ut *as*, Opus est nobis *we have need* auctoritate tuâ *of your authority*. Non accepit *he would not receive* pecuniam *money* ab iis *from them*, quâ *of which* sibi esset *he had* nihil usus *no need*.

(a.) Autem *but* opus, videtur *seems* quandoque *sometimes* poni *to be put* adjectivè *adjectively* pro *for* necessarius *necessary*: ut *as*, Dux *a leader* et *and* auctor *an adviser* est *is* opus *necessary* nobis *for us*.

27. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* vel *or* participia *participles* posita *put* pro adjectivis *for adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* cupidinem *desire*, scientiam *knowledge*, inemoriâ *memory*, timorem *fear*, diligentiam *diligence*, participationem *articipation*, atque *and* contraria *the contraries* iis *to these*, um plurimis aliis *with many others* quæ *which* denotant *denote* ualitatem *a quality* vel motum aliquem *or some passion* animi *f the mind*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Pythagoras Pythagoras appellavit *called* studiosos *those who were fond* sapientiæ *of wisdom* philosophos *philosophers*. Mens *a mind* conscia recti *conscious of rectitude* ridet *laughs* at mendacia *the lies* famæ *of rumour*. Estote *be ye* jam nunc *even now* memores *mindful* venturæ senectæ *of coming old age*. Mens hominum *the mind of man* nescia *ignorant* fati *of fate*

sortisque futuræ *and his future lot*. Romani *the Romans* fuerunt *were* appetentes *eager after* gloriæ *glory* præter *beyond* cæteras gentes *all other nations*. Serpit *he creeps* humi *on the ground* tutus nimium *too cautious* timidusque *and afraid* procellæ *of a storm*. Vir *a man* diligentissimus *most diligent* in omnis officii *every duty*. Cæteræ *the others* possunt *can* habere *have* domi *at home* participem *one who shares* omnium fortunarum *all their fortunes*. Sæpe *often* anus *an old woman* potens voti *having gained her wish* reddit *returns*.

(a.) Ex his *of these* particeps *sharing in* interdum *sometimes* jungitur *is joined* dativo *to a dative case* personæ *of the person*: ut *as*, Mater *the mother* particeps marito *sharing with her husband* in plerisque operibus *in most of the toils* ruris *of the country*.

(b.) Conscius *conscious* postulat *requires* genitivum *a genitive case* rei *of the thing*, dativum *a dative case* personæ *of the person*; interdum *sometimes* etiam *even* jungitur *it is joined* dativo *to a dative case* rei *of the thing*, personæ *the person* subauditâ *being understood*: ut *as*, Conscius sibi *conscious to himself* tanti sceleris *of such wickedness*. Mens tua *your mind* non debuit esse *ought not to have been* conscia *an accomplice in* huic facinori *this enormous wickedness*.

28. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* copiam *plenty* egestatemve *or want* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*, interdum *sometimes* etiam *also* ablativum *an ablative*: ut *as*, Dives *rich* equum *in horses*, dives *rich* pictâ vestis *in embroidered garments*, et *and* auri *gold*. Dives *rich* agris *in lands*, dives *rich* nummis *in money* positus *in* fœnore *laid out at usury*. Non indiga *not in need of* opis nostræ *our aid*. Omnia *everything* plena sunt *is full* errorum *of blunders*. Animus humanus *the human mind* est *is* expers *free from* utriusque *each* harum *of these things*.

29. Adjectiva *adjectives* quæ *which* significant *signify* liberalitatem *liberality*, vel *or* contrarium *the contrary*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Liberalis *liberal* pecuniæ *of his money*. Non parcus *not sparing* veteris aceti *of his old vinegar*.

30. Proprius *peculiar to*, superstes *surviving*, communis *common*, cum *with* paucis aliis *a few others*, admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case*, interdum *etiam sometimes also* dativum *a dative*: ut *as*, Libertas *liberty* est *is* propria *peculiar to* populi Romani *the Roman people*. Sumus *superstites we*

*have survived aliorum the others. Hoc this commune est is common cupidorum potentiae to those desirous of power cum otiosis with the indolent. Mors death est communis is common omni ætati to every age. Pomponius Pomponius superstes fuit survived Tiberio Tiberius.*

(a.) Communis vero *but communis nunquam jungitur is never joined* pronomini personali *to a personal pronoun, nisi except* dativo *in the dative*: ut *as, Hoc this commune est is common* mihi *to me* tecum *and you.*

31. Alienus *foreign to* jungitur *is joined* genitivo *to a genitive case, vel or* dativo *to a dative, vel or* ablativo *to an ablative, vel or* ablativo *to an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition*: ut *as, Censet he thinks hoc this alienum esse to be inconsistent with* suæ dignitatis *his dignity. Alienus averse ambitioni to ambition. Fraus deceit alienissima est is very foreign to* homine *the nature of man. Non alienus not averse a studiis to the studies* Scævola *of Scævola.*

32. Adjectiva *adjectives quæ which significant signify* crimen *crime vel or contrarium the contrary* junguntur *are joined* genitivo *to a genitive case*: ut *as, Regulus Regulus trahebat ad disquisitionem brought to examination collegam his colleague, ut as noxium guilty conjurationis of the conspiracy. Integer innocent vitæ in life, purusque and free from* sceleris *wickedness.*

33. Adjectiva *adjectives verbalia derived from verbs in ax ending in ax* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as, Tempus time edax is the consumer rerum of all things.*

34. Adjectiva partitiva *partitive adjectives, numeralia adjectives of number, comparativa comparatives et and superlativa superlatives, et also adjectiva adjectives posita put partitivè partitively, exigunt require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as, Accipe take utrum horum which of these two mavis you had rather. Romulus, fuit was primus the first Romanorum regum of the Roman kings. Dextra the right est is fortior the stronger manuum of the hands, Medius the middle est is longissimus the longest digitorum of the fingers. Sancte deorum O sacred deity! sequimur we follow te you.*

(a.) Usurpantur *they are used et also cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, de of, ex of, in among, inter among*: ut *as, Nam for alter one e vobis of you es Deus is a God, alter the other eris will be. Thales Thales fuit was sapientissimus the wisest in septem of the seven. Solus the only one de superis of the gods qui who vides see tua terga*

*your own back.* Inter mille rates among the thousand ships  
 tua puppis let your vessel be millesima the thousandth.

35. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* quibus *whereby* commodum *advantage*, similitudo *likeness*, aut iis similia *or anything like them* aut contraria *or contrary to them*, aut or relatio *relation* ad aliquid *to any thing* significatur *is signified*, postulant *require* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Si *if* facis *you take care* ut *that* sit *he be* idoneus *serviceable* patriæ *to his country*, utilis *useful* agris *to the lands*. Turba *a multitude* gravis *troublesome* paci *to peace*, que *and* inimica *averse* placidæ *quieti* *to gentle ease*. Similis *like* patri *his father*. Virtus *virtue* fructuosa *full of profit* aliis *to others*, laboriosa *full of toil* ipsi *for itself*. Color *the colour* qui *which* erat *was* albus *white* est *is* nunc *now* contrarius *contrary* albo *to white*. Socrates *Socrates* non fuit supplex *did not use entreaty* iudicibus *to the judges*. Carus *dear* Dīs ipsis *to the Gods themselves*. Poeta *a poet* est *is* finitimus *very near* akin oratori *to an orator*.

(a) Quædam *some* ex his *of these* *adjectives*, quæ *which* significant *signify* similitudinem *likeness*, et *and* adjectivum *the adjective* affinis *connected with*, junguntur *are joined* etiam *also* genitivo *to a genitive case*: ut *as*, Qui *those who* faciunt *think* mortem *death* leviozem *less momentous*, volunt *insist* esse *that it is* simillimam *very like* somni *sleep*. Affinis *connected with* hujus culpæ *this crime*.

36. Natus *born*, habilis *suitable*, commodus *convenient*, utilis *useful*, aptus *fit*, cum quibusdam aliis *with some others*, junguntur *are joined* etiam *also* accusativo *to an accusative case* cum *with* præpositione *a preposition*: ut *as*, Natus *born* ad gloriam *for glory*. Utilis *profitable* ad eam rem *to that business*.

37. Adjectiva verbalia *adjectives derived from verbs* in bilis *ending in bilis*, accepta *taken* passivè *passively*, postulant *require* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Lucus *iners* a thick grove penetrabilis *penetrable* nulli astro *by no star*.

38. Participia participles passivæ vocis *of the passive voice* postulant *require* dativum *a dative case* vel or ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition*: ut *as*, Mæcenâs *O Mæcenâs*, dicte *celebrated* mihi *by me* primâ Camœnâ *in my first poem*, dicende *to be celebrated* summâ *in my last*. Senex *the old man* dictus sapiens *called wise* ab Apolline *by Apollo*.

39. ADJECTIVA *adjectives significantia signifying magnitude* exigunt *require accusativum an accusative case* : ut *as*, Fossa *a ditch* undecim pedes lata *eleven feet wide*.

40. Natus *born cūm when* refertur *it refers* ad *durationem temporis to the duration of time* exigit *requires accusativum an accusative case* : ut *as*, Undeviginti annos natus *nineteen years old*.

41. Accusativus *an accusative case* sæpe *often* a poetis subjicitur *is put by poets after* adjectivis *adjectives* et *and* participiis *participles* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice*, præsertim *especially cūm when* pars affecta *the part affected* indicatur *is indicated* : ut *as*, Similis Deo *like a God* os *as to his face* humerosque *and shoulders*. Flores *flowers* inscripti *inscribed with nomina the names* regum *of kings*. Stratus *prostrate* membra *as to one's limbs* nunc *at one time* viridi sub arbuto *under a green arbutus*.

42. Accusativus *an accusative case* sæpe *often* usurpatur *is used* in exclamationibus *in exclamations*, interjectione aliquâ *some interjection* subauditâ *being understood* a quâ *by which* reverà regitur *it is in reality governed* : ut *as*, Me cæcum *blind that I am* qui non viderim *not to have seen* hæc *this* ante *before*.

43. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* regunt *govern ablativum an ablative case* significantem *signifying causam the cause*, aut *or formam the form*, vel *or modum the manner* rei *of a thing* : ut *as*, Par est *he is equal* illi *to him* scelere *in wickedness*, inferior *inferior* industriâ *in energy*. Cæsar, Trojanus *a Trojan* origine *by descent*.

44. Dignus *worthy*, indignus *unworthy*, præditus *endued*, contentus *content*, extorris *banished*, fretus *relying upon*, cum *with* adjectivis *adjectives* significantibus *signifying pretium price*, exigunt *require ablativum an ablative case* : ut *as*, Es *you are* dignus *worthy* odio *of hatred*. Mens *the mind* prædita est *is endued* motu sempiterno *with perpetual motion*. Abi *go your way* contentus *contented* sorte tuâ *with your lot*. Extorris *banished from agro Romano the Roman territory*. Otium *ease* venale *to be purchased* gemmis *with jewels* nec *nor* auro *with gold*. Quod non opus est *what is not necessary* carum est *is dear* asse *at a penny*.

(a.) Nonnulla *some* horum *of these* admittunt *admit interdum sometimes* poeticè *in poetry* genitivum *a genitive case* :

ut *as*, Indignus *unworthy* magnorum avorum *of my great ancestors*.

(*b.*) Fretus *relying upon* interdum *sometimes*, sed *but* raro *seldom*, jungitur *is joined* dativo *to a dative case*: ut *as*, Multitudo hostium *the multitude of the enemy* freta fuit *relied* nulli rei *on nothing* præter quam numero *except their numbers*.

45. Natus, satus, cretus, *born of*, et *and* similia words of similar meaning exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition*; ortus, editus, *born of*, require *an ablative case*, vel *either* cum *with* vel *or* sine præpositione *without a preposition*: ut *as*, Nate o *you* born Deâ *of a goddess*. Sate o *man* sprung from sanguine *the blood* Divûm *of the Gods*. Hortamur *we encourage* him fari *to tell* quo sanguine *of what race* cretus *he is sprung*. Generate o *son* Anchisâ *of Anchises*, certissima proles *most undoubted offspring* Deûm *of the Gods*. Venus *Venus* orta mari *born of the sea* præstat mare *makes the sea safe* eunti *for the voyager*. Nympha *I a nymph* edita *born* de magno flumine *of a mighty river* contenta fui *was content* te *with you* marito *for my husband*.

46. Ablativus rei *an ablative case of the thing* ad quam *to which* comparatio *comparison* fiat *is made* subjicitur *is put* after comparativis adjectives *in the comparative degree*, vel *or* else utraque res comparata *each of the things which are compared together* ponitur *is put* in eodem casu *in the same case*, conjunctione quàm *the conjunction quàm than* interpositâ *being inserted*: ut *as*, Argentum *silver* est *is* vilius *of less value* auro *than gold*, aurum *gold* virtutibus *than* virtute. Certa pax *certain peace* melior est *is better* tutiorque *and safer* quàm *than* sperata victoria *a victory hoped for*.

(*a.*) Cùm *when* duo adjectiva *two adjectives* vel *or* adverbia *adverbs* comparantur *inter se are compared together*, et *and* conjunguntur *are connected* per quàm *by quàm*, ambo *both* fere ponuntur *are usually put* in comparativo *in the comparative degree*: ut *as*, Concio *the speech* Publii Æmilii *of Publius Æmilius* fuit verior quàm gratior *was true rather than pleasing* populo *to the people*. Non timeo *I am not afraid* ne lest videar *I should seem* evomere hæc *to pour forth these things* in illum *against him* libentius quàm verius *with more eagerness than truth*.

(*b.*) Post *after* minus *less*, plus, amplius, *more*, et *and* longius *farther*, quàm *than* interdum *sometimes* omittitur *is*

*omitted, nihilominus nevertheless substantivum the substantive quod sequitur which follows non ponitur is not put in ablativo in the ablative case : ut as, Si if vos ye hodie to-day feceritis make minus less decem plebis tribunos than ten tribunes of the people. Cùm when æger fuisset he had been sick plus annum more than a year. Dixit he said copias that the troops Gallorum of the Gauls abfuisse were absent ab hybernis suis from his winter quarters non longius not further millia passuum octo than eight miles.*

(c.) Aliquando sometimes quàm pro, cum substantivo with a substantive, quàm qui, vel or quàm ut, cum verbo with a verb, subjiciuntur are put after comparativis adjectives in the comparative degree : ut as, Prælium a battle editur takes place atrocius more violent quàm pro numero than one would expect from the number pugnantium of the combatants. Major sum I am too great quàm cui fortuna possit nocere for fortune to be able to injure me. Flumen the river latius erat was too wide quàm ut transire possent for them to be able to swim across.

47. MEI of me, tui of thee or you, sui of himself, nostri of us, vestri of you, genitivi the genitive cases primitivorum of their primitives, ponuntur are used cùm when persona a person significatur is signified : ut as, Languet she languishes desiderio tui for want of you. Parsque and part tui of you lateat may lie clausa shut up corpore meo in my body. Imago nostri the picture of our person.

48. MEUS mine, tuus thine, suus his own, noster ours, vester yours, ponuntur are used cùm when actio action vel or possessio the possession rei of a thing significatur is signified : ut as, Favet he favours desiderio tuo your desire. Imago nostra our picture, (id est that is, quam which nos we possidemus do possess.)

49. Pronomina possessiva possessive pronouns interdum sometimes recipiant take post se after them hos genitivos these genitive cases, ipsius of himself, solius of him alone, unius of one, omnium of all, plurium of more, paucorum of few, cujusque of every one ; et and also genitivos the genitive cases participiorum of participles qui which referuntur are referred ad primitivum to a primitive subauditum understood : ut as, Dixi I affirmed rempublicam that the state esse salvam was preserved meâ unius operâ by my single service. Meum

*solius peccatum my offence alone non potest cannot corrigi be amended. Cùm whereas nemo nobody legat reads scripta mea timentis the writings of me fearing recitare to rehearse them vulgò publicly. Ceperis conjecturam you may guess de studio tuo ipsius by your own study. Præstantior more excellent in suâ cujusque laude each in his own skill. Nostrâ omnium memoriâ in the memory of us all. Respondet he answers vestris paucorum laudibus the praises of you few.*

50. *Sui of himself et and suus his own sunt are reciproca reciprocals; id est that is, reflectuntur they have relation semper always ad id to that quod which præcessit went before præcipuum most to be noted in sententiâ in the sentence: ut as, Animus the mind sentit feels se that it moveri is moved vi suâ by its own power non alienâ not by that of anything else. Pater my father oravit me begged me ut venirem to come ad se to him.*

51. *Hæc demonstrativa these pronouns demonstrative, hic iste, ille, is, fere commonly distinguuntur are distinguished sic thus; hic, demonstrat points to proximum the nearest mihi to me; iste, eum him qui who est is apud te by you; ille, eum him qui who est is remotus at a distance ab utroque from both of us; is, eum him de quo of whom mentio fit mention is being made.*

52. *Quum when hic et and ille referuntur are referred ad duo anteposita to two things or persons going before, hic, plerumque generally refertur is referred ad posterius to the latter, ille, ad prius to the former: ut as, Cæsar Cæsar habebatur was accounted magnus great magnificentiâ for his liberality, Cato Cato integritate vitæ for the integrity of his life: Ille the former clarus factus was illustrious mansuetudine for his merciful disposition; huic to the latter severitas vitæ the strictness of his life addiderat had added dignitatem dignity.*

(a.) *Nonnunquam vero but sometimes hic et and ille habent have mutatas vices their places changed: ut as, Certa pax certain peace melior est is better tutiorque and safer quàm than sperata victoria victory hoped for; hæc the one est is in tuâ potestate in your own power, illa the other in Deorum in that of the Gods.*

53. *Idem the same sæpe often habet has vim copulativam a copulative force: ut as, Nil nothing liberale est is liberal quod non idem which is not also justum just. Operari con-*



ferunt *they devote their attention* in res obscuras *to obscure matters*, eisdemque *and these too* non necessarias *not necessary*.

54. VERBA substantiva *verbs substantive*, ut *as*, sum *I am*, fio *I am made*, existo *I am*; verba passiva *verbs passive* vocandi *of calling*, ut *as*, nominor *I am named*, appellor *I am called*, dicor *I am said*, vocor *I am called*, et *and* similia *the like* iis *to them*, ut *as*, videor *I am seen*, habeor *I am accounted*, existimor *I am thought*, habent *have* eosdem casus *the same cases* utrinque *on both sides*: ut *as*, Deus *God* est *is* Creator *the Maker* mundi *of the world*. Natura *nature* dedit *hath granted* omnibus *to all* esse *to be* beatis *happy*. Ex nitido *from a smart man* fit *he becomes* rusticus *a clown*. Dicorque *and I am called* opifer *helper* per orbem *all over the world*. Da *grant* mihi *to me* fallere *to deceive*, da *grant* to me videri *to seem* iusto *just* sanctoque *and holy*.

(a.) Item *likewise* omnia verba *all verbs* ferè *in a manner* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* adjectivum *an adjective*, quod *which* concordat *agrees* cum *with* nominativo verbi *the nominative case of the verb* casu *in case*, genere *gender*, et *and* numero *number*: ut *as*, Pii *pious men* orant *pray* taciti *silently*. Malus pastor *a bad shepherd* dormit *sleeps* supinus *with his face upwards*.

55. SUM *I am* et *and* fio *I become* postulant *require* genitivum *a genitive case* quoties *as often as* significant *they signify* possessionem *possession*, officium *duty*, signum *sign*, aut *or* id *that* quod *which* pertinet *has respect* ad rem quampiam *to anything*: ut *as*, Est *it is* the duty adolescentis *of a young man* revereri *to reverence* majores natu *his elders*. Thebæ *Thebes* factæ sunt *became* populi Romani *the property of the Roman people* jure belli *by the right of war*.

56. Verba *verbs* accusandi *of accusing*, damnandi *of condemning*, absolvendi *of acquitting*, et *and* similia *the like*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case* criminis *of the accusation* vel *or* poenæ *of the punishment*, accusativum *an accusative* personæ *of the person*: ut *as*, Accusat *he accuses* alterum *the other* ambitus *of bribery*. Insimulabant *they accused* eum *him* prodicionis *of treason*. Damnatus est *he was condemned* octupli *in eight-fold* damages.

57. Hic genitivus *this genitive case* vertitur *is changed* aliquando *sometimes* in ablativum *into an ablative*, interdum

*sometimes* (cū when de crimine agitur *the accusation is spoken of*) cum with præpositione de *the preposition de* : ut as, Si if es you are iniquus judex a partial judge in me to me. ego I condemnabo will condemn te you eodem crimine. of the same crime. Non damnaver I should not be condemned capite to death ob eam rem for that matter. Restituit he restored Licinium Licinius condemnatum who had been condemned de aleâ for gambling.

(a.) Uterque both, nullus none, alter the other, neuter neither of the two, alius another, ambo both, et and adjectiva superlativa adjectives of the superlative degree, junguntur are joined verbis to verbs hujusmodi of that kind non nisi only in ablativo in the ablative case : ut as, Accusas do you accuse him furti of theft an or stupri indecency? Utrouque of both. Accusaris you are accused de plurimis of very many things simul at once.

58. Verba verbs miserendi of pitying postulant require genitivum a genitive case, præter except miseror to pity, qui which jungitur is joined soli accusativo to an accusative case only : ut as, Oro I pray you miserere pity laborum tantorum such great distresses, miserere pity animi a soul ferentis suffering non digna things undeserved. Osola miserata O you who alone have pitied infandos labores the unspeakable calamities Trojæ of Troy.

59. Verba verbs reminiscendi of remembering et and obliviscendi of forgetting admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case, vel or accusativum an accusative : us as, Est it is proprium the property stultitiæ of folly cernere to discern aliorum vitia other men's faults, oblivisci to forget suorum its own. Nec memini nor do I remember veterum malorum the old misfortunes lætorve nor am I glad of them. Recordabitur he will recollect flagitiorum suorum his crimes. Tu you, Caius Cæsar O Caius Cæsar, soles are wont oblivisci to forget nihil nothing nisi except injurias injuries. Juvabit it will be a pleasure olim hereafter meminisse to call to mind hæc these things. Si if recordor I recollect ritè well audita the things I heard.

60. Verba verbs admonendi of admonishing exigunt require genitivum rei a genitive of the thing, accusativum personæ an accusative of the person ; interdum sometimes ablativum rei an ablative of the thing cum with præpositione de the preposition de, interdum sometimes geminum accusativum a double accusative : ut as, Catilina Catiline admonebat reminded alium

*one egestatis of his need, alium another cupiditatis suæ of his covetousness. Putavi I thought te that you admonendum esse ought to be admonished eâ de re of that matter. Unoquoque gradu at every step commonemur we are reminded de avaritiâ tuâ of your avarice. Præclarè admones you do well to admonish me me illud of that.*

61. Potior to gain or enjoy jungitur is joined aut either genitivo to a genitive case, aut or ablativo to an ablative : ut as, Romani the Romans potiti sunt gained signorum the standards et and armorum the arms. Troës the Trojans egressi being landed potiuntur enjoy optatâ arenâ the wished-for shore.

62. OMNIA verba all verbs fere commonly regunt govern dativum a dative case ejus rei of that thing cujus causâ for the sake of which aliquid anything fit is done, aut or in quam to which actio the action refertur is referred : ut as, Sic so nulum tempus no time abibit vobis will pass by to you iners unproductive. Magna injuria a great injury facta est was done Laomedonti to Laomedon. Pisistratus Pisistratus vicit conquered Megarenses the Megarians sibi for himself non not patriæ for his country. Hoc this patet is evident omnibus to all. Quid what majus greater thing nutricula can a nurse voveat pray for dulci alumno for her dear boy ? Appius Appius blanditur mihi caresses me. Civitas Romana the Roman state olim formerly parum vacabat had but little leisure liberalibus studiis for liberal studies. Namque for est mihi there is to me domi at home pater a father, est there is injusta noverca an unjust step-mother. Consulte consult vobis for yourselves, prospicite provide patriæ for your country Medici physicians timent dread noxam the injurious qualities vini of wine ægris for invalids.

(a.) Sed but delecto to delight, juvo to help, lædo to hurt, exigunt require accusativum an accusative case : ut as, Arbusta trees non juvant do not please omnes every one.

63. Verba verbs comparandi of comparing regunt govern dativum a dative case, interdum etiam sometimes also accusativum an accusative vel or ablativum an ablative cum præpositionibus with the prepositions inter vel or cum : ut as, Sic thus solebam was I used componere to compare magna great things parvis to small. Comparete compare hominem cum homine man with man, rem cum re circumstance with circumstance. Comparemus let us compare partes the parts honestatis of honesty inter se with one another.

64. Verba *verbs* dandi *of giving*, reddendi *of restoring*, et *and* contraria *the contrary*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Fortuna *fortune* dat *gives* nimis *too much* multis *to many*, satis *enough* nulli *to nobody*. Quis casus *what event* ademit *te has taken you away* mihi *from me*? Numeravit *he paid* mihi *to me* æs alienum *the debt*.

65. Verba *verbs* appropinquandi *of approaching*, adjungendi *of joining*, et *and* contraria *the contraries to them*, exigunt *require* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Ingenuus *puer the well-born boy* rudis *being unpractised* nescit *knows not* hærere *to stick* equo *to a horse*. Miscebat *he used to mingle* mella *honey* forti *forti* Falerno *with the strong Falernian wine*. Jungit *he yokes* equos *horses* currui *to the chariot*. Celata *virtus concealed* paulum *distat is but little removed* from sepultæ *inertis buried* indolence: eripe *te tear yourself* moræ *from delay*.

(a.) Quædam *ex his some of these verbs* composita *compounded* cum *with* præpositione *ad the preposition* ad *admit* tantum *admit* accusativum *an accusative case* cum *ad* with *ad*; et *and* interdum *sometimes* verba *verbs* amovendi *of removing* et *and* distandi *of being distant* admittunt *admit* ablativum *an ablative* cum *præpositione with a preposition*, vel *or* (apud *poetas in the poets*) sine *præpositione without a preposition*: ut *as*, Hi *these* appropinquant *are near* ad summam *aquam the top of the water*. Fretum *a strait* separat *separates* Seston *Sestos* Abydenâ *urbe from the city of Abydos*. Mors *igitur death therefore* abducit *nos takes us away* a malis *from misfortunes* non *not* a bonis *from pleasing circumstances*. Narras *you tell us* quantum *how much* Codrus *Codrus* distet *is removed* ab Inacho *from Inachus*.

66. Verba *verbs* imperandi *of commanding*, parendi *of obeying*, resistendi *of resisting*, et *and* dicendi *of telling*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Pecunia *money* collecta *gathered up* imperat *commands* aut *or* servit *serves* cuique *every man*. Dic *mihi tell me* quid *feci what* feci *have I done*? Quæ *which things* promitto *tibi I promise you* me esse *observaturum to observe* sanctissime *most religiously*. Tempore *in time* animosus *equus the spirited horse* paret *obeys* lentis *habenis the slow reins*. Repugnaui *I opposed* omnibus *ejus dictis all his speeches*.

(a.) Excipe *except* rego *to rule*, guberno *to govern*, jubeo *to order*, quæ *which verbs* have accusativum *an accusative*

*case* ; *tempero to rule, et and moderor to rule, quæ which* admittunt *admit vel either dativum a dative case, vel or accusativum an accusative case* : ut *as, Jubebo I will command fortem animum my brave mind tolerare to endure hoc this. Ille he regit animos restrains their fierceness dictis with his words. Hortor te I exhort you ut gubernes to manage omnia everything tuâ prudentiâ according to your own wisdom. Sit censor let there be a censor qui doceat who may teach viros husbands moderari uxoribus to manage their wives. Decet it is right moderari consilia to direct one's counsels non not voluptate according to pleasure sed but officio duty. Æolus Æolus temperat restrains iras the violence ventorum of the winds. Vix temperavere they scarcely restrained animis their courage.*

67. *Verba verbs irascendi of being angry regunt govern dativum a dative case* : *Verba verbs condonandi of pardoning dativum a dative personæ of the person, accusativum an accusative culpæ of the fault, si if ambo both exprimuntur are expressed* ; *si if alterum tantum one only be expressed, dativum a dative* : *Verba verbs minandi of threatening dativum govern a dative personæ of the person, accusativum an accusative rei of the thing* : ut *as, Nihil est there is no reason quod succenseam why I should be angry adolescenti with the young man. Homines men ignoscunt sibi omnia forgive themselves for everything. Minatus est he threatened utrique each of them mortem with death.*

68. *Verba verbs fidendi of trusting et and contraria the contrary iis to them exigunt require dativum a dative case* : ut *as, Decet it is fit committere to commit nil nothing nisi but lene what is soft vacuis venis to the empty veins. Diffidit he distrusts perpetuitati the continuance bonorum suorum of his good fortune.*

(a.) *Interdum vero but sometimes verba fidendi verbs of trusting junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative* : ut *as, Confidit he trusts in stabilitate the stability fortunæ of fortune.*

69. *Verba verbs composita compounded cum his adverbiiis with these adverbs, bene well, malè ill, satis enough* ; *et and cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re, ferme for the most part regunt govern dativum a dative case* : ut *as, Dii may the Gods benefaciant do good tibi to thee ! Multitudo the multitude circumfundebatur surrounded on all sides con-*

cionanti him *haranguing*. Judices the judges debuerant ought constare to have been consistent sibi with themselves, et and convenire to have agreed superioribus judiciis with former decisions. Campus a plain interjacens lying between Tiberi the Tiber et and mœnibus Romanis the walls of Rome. Obstiti I opposed omnibus ejus consiliis all his plans. Ausa est she has dared postponere to postpone vos you natis suis to her own children. Præfecit Brutum he appointed Brutus to command copiis the troops. Proponite ora ipsa place his very countenance before oculis your eyes. Magnitudine animi by magnanimity potest repugnari one can resist fortunæ fortune. Superfuit he survived patri his father.

(a.) Nonnulla tamen but some ex his of these interdum sometimes regunt govern accusativum an accusative case : ut as, Alius one præstat exceeds alium another ingenio in ability. Beatum est it is a happy thing post mortem after death convenire to meet eos those qui who vixerint have lived justè justly et and cum fide honourably.

70. Interdum sometimes dativus a dative case agentis of the agent subjicitur is put after passivis verbis passive verbs ; interdum sometimes ablativus an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition : ut as, Hoc this non intelligitur is not understood viventi by any one living in laboribus in labours. Laudatur he is praised ab his by the one, culpatur he is blamed ab illis by the others.

71. Sum cum multis aliis the verb sum with many others admittit admits geminum dativum a double dative case, alterum one personæ of the person or object, alterum the other rei of the thing or effect : ut as, Mare the sea est is exitio the destruction avidis nautis of greedy sailors. Reliquit he left quinque cohortes five cohorts præsidio as a protection castris to the camp. Delegerunt they chose hunc locum this place domicilio for a habitation sibi for themselves.

72. VERBA transitiva verbs transitive exigunt require accusativum an accusative case : ut as, Cano I sing of arma arms virumque and the man. Non deprecor I do not deprecate mortem death, inquit said he.

73. Verba neutralia verbs neuter sæpe often habent have post se after them accusativum an accusative case cognatæ significationis of a like signification : ut as, Servit he serves duram servitutem a hard servitude Nec nor vox does your

voice sonat sound hominem like a human creature; O Dea O a Goddess, certè doubtless.

(a.) Verba neutralia *neuter verbs* aliquando etiam *sometimes also* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative* ejus rei *of that thing* quæ *which* significat *signifies* causam *the cause*: ut as, Id succenseo *I am angry about that matter* tibi *with you*.

74. Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking*, docendi *of teaching*, celandi *of concealing*, cogendi *of compelling*, sæpe *often* regunt *govern* duplicem accusativum *two accusative cases*: ut as, Tu modò *do but you* posce *ask* veniam *pardon* Deos *of the Gods*. Consuefeci *I have accustomed* filium *my son* ne celet *not to conceal* ea *these things* me *from me*. Quid *why*, asine o *ass*, nunc te doceam *should I now teach you* literas *letters*? Quid *to what* non cogis *do you not drive* mortalia pectora *mortal hearts*, sacra fames o *cursed desire* auri *for gold*?

(a.) Sæpe etiam *often also* verba docendi *verbs of teaching* per ellipsin *by ellipsis* admittunt *admit* ablativum *an ablative*: ut as, Nobilissimus fidicen *a very celebrated lyre-player* docuit Socratem *taught* Socrates fidibus *the lyre*, (i.e. *that is*, ludere fidibus *to play on the lyre*.)

75. Quædam etiam verba *some verbs also* motûs *of motion* composita *compounded* cum præpositionibus *with the prepositions* ad, trans, circum, præter, regunt *govern* duplicem accusativum *a double accusative case*, quorum alter *one of which* refertur *is referred* ad præpositionem *to the preposition*: ut as, Trajecit copias *he threw his troops across* Iberum *the Ebro*. Idem *he also* adigit Afranium *compels* Afranium, *to take an oath*.

76. Verba *verbs* quæ *which* activâ voce *in the active voice* regunt *govern* duplicem accusativum *a double accusative case*, et *and* verba *verbs* vestiendi *of clothing*, habent *have* post se *after them* accusativum *an accusative case* etiam *also* in passivâ voce *in the passive voice*: ut as, Posceris *you are required to sacrifice* exta *the entrails* bovis *of a heifer*. Belgæ *the Belgians* transducuntur *are led across* Rhenum *the Rhine*. Induiturque *and he is clothed with* aures *the ears* aselli *of an ass* lentè gradientis *which proceeds slowly*.

77. QUODVIS verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* ablativum *an ablative case* significantem *signifying* instrumentum *the instrument*, aut *or* causam *the cause*, aut *or* modum *the manner* actionis *of an action*: ut as, Hi *these* certant *endeavour*

defendere *to defend themselves* jaculis *with darts*, illi *they* saxis *with stones*. Miltiades *Miltiades* constituit *settled* res *the affairs* Chersonesi *of the Chersonese* summâ æquitate *with the greatest equity*. Gloriantur *they boast* suâ victoriâ *of their victory*. Vivunt *they live* lacte *on milk*. Præstitit *he excelled* omnibus *all men* lepore *in wit*. Oportet nos *it becomes us* dolere *to grieve* delicto *at a fault*, gaudere *to rejoice* correctione *at correction*. Subvexerat frumentum *he had carried* corn up flumine Arari *the river Saone* navibus *in ships*.

78. Cùm *when* nomen agentis *the name of the agent* sequitur *follows* verbum *the verb*, ponitur *it is put* in ablativo *in the ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition* : ut *as*, Pompeius Pompey victus est *was defeated* à Cæsare *by Cæsar*.

79. Ablativus *an ablative* pretii *of the price* plerumque subjicitur *is generally put after* verbis *verbs* emendi *of buying*, vendendi *of selling*, æstimandi *of valuing* : ut *as*, Victoria *the victory* stetit Pœnis *cost the Carthaginians* multo sanguine *much blood*. Isocrates *Isocrates* vendidit *sold* unam orationem *one speech* triginta talentis *for thirty talents*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* genitivus *a genitive case* subjicitur *is put after* them, voce pretio *the word pretio* subauditâ *being understood* : ut *as*, Nequicquam iis *of no consequence to them* pensi est *it is* quid faciant *what they do*. Judices *the judges* non flocci faciunt rempublicam *do not value the republic a straw*.

(b.) Tanti *for so much*, quanti *for how much*, pluris *for more*, minoris *for less*, plurimi *for very much*, cum paucis similibus *with a few similar words*, sæpe usurpantur *are often used* post hæc verba *after these verbs* : ut *as*, Eris *you will be* tanti *of so much value* aliis *to others*, quanti *as* fueris *you are* tibi *to yourself*. Alexander *Alexander* plurimi fecerat Hephæstionem *had very greatly valued Hephæstion*.

80. Verba *verbs* abundandi *of abounding*, implendi *of filling*, onerandi *of loading*, et *and* his contraria *their contraries*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* : ut *as*, Antipho *Antipho*, abundas *you abound* amore *with love*. Sylla *Sylla* explevit *filled* omnes suos *all his army* divitiis *with riches*. Quibus mendaciis *with what lies* homines levissimi *have the vainest men* onerârunt *loaded* te *you*? Queror *I complain* vela *that your sails* carere *have no return*, verba *your words* fide *no honesty*. Egeo *pane* *I want bread*.



(a.) Sæpe etiam *often also* verba egendi *verbs of wanting* et and implendi *of filling* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut as, Implentur *they are filled* veteris Bacchi *with old wine*, pinguisque ferinæ *and fat venison*. Indigent *they want* non tam *not so much* artis *skill* quàm as laboris *industry*.

81. Verba *verbs* abstinendi *of abstaining from* atque and arcendi *of driving away from* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative case* : interdum *sometimes* cum præpositione *with a preposition*, quæ quidem *which indeed* semper usurpatur *is always used* ante personam *before a person* : ut as, Lucius Brutus *Lucius Brutus* liberavit *delivered* civitatem *the state* dominatu regio *from the dominion of the kings*. Gaudeo *I am glad* te *that you* liberatum *are recovered* à quartanâ *from your ague*. Apud veteres Romanos *among the ancient Romans* nefas habebatur *it was considered impiety* arcere *to repel* quemcunque mortalium *any mortal* tecto *from one's roof*. Tu Jupiter *do you, o Jupiter*, arcebis *repel* hunc *this man* a tuis aris *from your altars*, a tectis urbis *from the houses of the city*.

(a.) Apud poetas *among the poets* (ad usum Græcorum *in imitation of the Greek usage*) verba abstinendi *verbs of abstaining from* aliquando *sometimes* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut as, Abstineto *abstain*, dixit *said* she, irarum *from anger* calidæque rixæ *and hot strife*. Desine *desist* tandem *at length* mollium querelarum *from effeminate complaints*.

82. Fungor *to discharge*, fruor *to enjoy*, utor *to use*, vescor *to live upon*, dignor *to think one's self worthy*, muto *to change*, et and composita *their compounds*, et and supersedeo *to pass by*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* : ut as, Qui *he who* volet *shall desire* adipisci *to get* veram gloriam *true glory*, fungatur *should discharge* officiis *the duties* justitiæ *of justice*. Hannibal *Hannibal* cùm *when* posset uti *he might have reaped advantage* victoriâ *from his victory* maluit *preferred* frui *to reap only* pleASURE. Quid *what* puer Ascanius *is become of the boy Ascanius*, superatne *does he survive* et and vescitur aurâ *breathe the air of life*? Equidem *truly* haud dignor me *I do not think myself worthy* tali honore *of such honor*. Diruit *he pulls down*, ædificat *he builds*, mutat *he changes* quadrata *square things* rotundis *for round*. Super-sedendum est *we must forbear* multitudine *a multitude* verborum *of words*.

83. *Pascor to feed upon et and nitor to lean upon* junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case*, vel *either* sine præpositione *without a preposition*, vel *or* cum præpositione *with a preposition*: ut *as*, Pascuntur *they feed* floribus *on flowers* et *and* victu *on the food* simplicis herbæ *of the plain herb*. Livor *envy* pascitur *feeds* in vivis *on the living*. Juvenis *the youth* qui nititur *who leans* purâ hastâ *on a bright spear*. Salus *the safety* civitatis *of the state* nitebatur *depended* in vitâ *on the life* Pompeii *of Pompey*.

84. Ablativus *the ablative case* dicitur *is called* absolutus *absolute* quoties *as often as* substantivum *the substantive* construitur *is construed* in ablativo *in the ablative* cum participio *with a participle*, vel *or* adjectivo *an adjective*, (interdum *sometimes* etiam *even* cum alio substantivo *with another substantive*,) ut denotet *to denote* tempus *the time* vel *or* modum *the manner* vel *aliam rem comitantem or any other accompanying circumstance*; ut *as*, Archilochus *Archilochus* floruit *flourished* Romulo regnante *when Romulus was king*. Nihil *nothing* agi potest *can be done* de hac re *in this matter* salvis legibus *without violating the laws*. Exposito *it being shown* quid iniquitas loci posset *what great influence the unfavourable nature of the ground had*. Me duce *if I am the leader* tutus eris *you will be safe*.

85. Ablativus *an ablative case* partis *of the part* affectæ *affected*, et *and* poëticè *by the poets* accusativus *an accusative*, additur *is added* verbis quibusdam *to some verbs*: ut *as*, Micat *he quivers* auribus *in his ears* et *and* tremit *trembles* artus *as to his limbs*.

(a.) Quædam *some of these verbs* usurpantur *are used* (ad usum Græcorum *in imitation of the usage of the Greeks*, sed *but* rarissimè *very rarely*,) etiam *also* cum genitivo *with a genitive case*: ut *as*, Facis *you act* absurdè *absurdly*, qui *who* angas *tormentest* te *yourself* animi *in mind*.

86. Exsulo *to be banished* admittit *admits* ablativum *an ablative*, veneo *to be sold* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition*, vapulo *to be beaten* ablativum *an ablative* vel *either* sine præpositione *without a preposition* vel *or* cum præpositione *with a preposition*: ut *as*, Utar tamen *but I will use* mente *my mind* quæ *which* sola *alone* non exsulat *is not banished* loco *from its place*. Respondit *he answered* se *that he* malle *preferred* spoliari *to be plundered* à cive *by a citizen*, quàm *venire* *to being sold* ab hoste *by an enemy*.

*Testis the witness* rogatus est *was asked* an *whether* vapulasset *he had been beaten* fustibus *with clubs* ab reo *by the prisoner*. Sentiet *he shall feel* se *that* he vapulare *is stricken* sermonibus *by the discourse* omnium *of every one*.

87. VERBA infinita *verbs of the infinitive mood* adduntur *are put after* quibusdam verbis *some verbs*, et *and* participiis *participles*, et *and* adjectivis *adjectives* : ut *as*, Amor love jussit *commanded me* scribere *to write* quæ *what things* puduit *I was ashamed* dicere *to speak*. Jussus *being ordered* confundere foedus *to violate the treaty*. Erat *he was* tum *then* dignus *worthy* amari *to be loved*.

88. Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking*, hortandi *of exhorting*, imperandi *of commanding*, et *and* contraria *the contrary*, raro *seldom* (nisi *except* apud poetas *in the poets*) habent *have* infinitivum *an infinitive* post se *after them*, plerumque vero *but usually* conjunctionem *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with the subjunctive mood* : ut *as*, Oro et hortor te illud *this I beg and exhort you*, ut sis *to be* diligentissimus *most diligent* in munere tuo *in your office*. Moneo *I warn* obtestorque *and entreat you*, ne hos negligas *not to neglect these people* qui propinqui tibi sunt *genere are near to you in family*. Themistocles *Themistocles* persuasit populo *persuaded the people* ut classis *that a fleet* ædificaretur *should be built*.

(a.) Ex his vero *but of these verbs* jubeo *to command* et *and* veto *to forbid* etiam in pedestri sermone *even in prose* sæpius junguntur *are more frequently joined* infinitivo *to an infinitive* : ut *as*, Hannibal *Hannibal* jussit *ordered* Tarentinos *the Tarentines* convocari *to be summoned* sine armis *without arms*.

89. Conjunctio *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive mood* semper sequitur *always follows* verba efficiendi *verbs of causing* : ut *as*, Tu *do you* facito *take care* ut sciam *that I know* quicquid indagâris *whatever you find out* de republicâ *about the republic*.

90. Conjunctio *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive* plerumque sequitur *always follows* verba accidendi *verbs of happening* et *and* similia *the like* : ut *as*, Persæpe evenit *it very often happens* ut *that* utilitas expediency certet *is at variance* cum honestate *with honesty*. Quoniam *since* satisfeci *I have satisfied* amicis *my friends*, reliquum est *it remains* ut egomet mihi consulam *for me to take care of myself*.

(a.) Sed *but* infinitivus *an infinitive* sæpe sequitur *often follows* contingit : ut *as*, Non contingit *it does not happen* cuivis homini *to every man* adire Corinthum *to go to Corinth*.

91. Verba *verbs* permittendi *of permitting*, optandi *of wishing*, cogendi *of compelling*, admittunt *admit* vel *either* infinitivum *an infinitive*, vel *or* ut, cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive* : ut *as*, Phaethon *Phaethon* optavit *wished* ut olleretur *to be taken up* in currum *into the chariot* patris *of his* ather. Natura *nature* non patitur *does not permit* ut augeamus *us to increase* nostras opes *our riches* spoliis *by the spoils* aliorum *of others*. Permittes *you will permit* ipsis numinibus *the Gods themselves* expendere *to consider* quid *what* conveniat *is good for* nobis *us*.

92. Oportet *it behoves* et *and* necesse est *it is necessary* habent post se *have after them* interdum *sometimes* infinitivum *an infinitive* mood, sæpius *more frequently* subjunctivum *a subjunctive* : ut *as*, Oportet valeat possessor *the owner should be in good health*. Tanquam *as if* non solum oporteret *it were not only right* sed etiam *but even* necesse esset *necessary* ita fieri *that it should be done so*. Necesse est *it is inevitable* corpus mortale *that a mortal body* intereat *should perish*.

93. Post verba orandi *after verbs of entreating*, imperandi *of commanding*, vel *or* volendi *of wishing*, ut sæpe omittitur *ut is often omitted*, verbum tamen *nevertheless the verb* ponitur *is put* in subjunctivo *in the subjunctive mood* : ut *as*, Rogo atque oro te *I beg and entreat you* pro amore nostro *by my regard for you* colligas te *to recollect yourself* virumque præbeas *and show yourself a man*. Postero die *the next day* rex *the king* edixit *ordered* omnes *all the men* coirent *to assemble* armati *armed*. Vellem *I wish* Dî immortales *the immortal Gods* fecissent *had granted* ut ageremus gratias *that we should return thanks* Ser. Sulpicio *to Servius Sulpicius* vivo *while alive*. Malo *I had rather* sapiens hostis *that a wise enemy* metuatur *te should fear you* quam *than* stulti cives *foolish citizens* laudent *praise you*.

(a.) Sic *so* post *after* cave *beware* ne sæpe omittitur *ne is often omitted* : ut *as*, Cave existimes *do not believe me that I* abjecisse curam *have abandoned all regard* reipublicæ *for the republic*.

94. Verba infinita *verbs of the infinitive mood* interdum *sometimes* ponuntur *are put* sola *alone* per ellipsin *by the*

*figure ellipsis* : ut *as*, Hinc upon this spargere in vulgum [*he began*] to scatter abroad voces ambiguas doubtful sayings, et and conscius knowing himself guilty quærere to seek arma means to destroy me. (Incipiebat *he began*, subauditur hîc is here understood.)

95. GERUNDIA in di *gerunds in di* habent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* cum *with* genitivis *genitive cases*, et *and* pendent *depend* à substantivis *on substantives*, vel *or* ab adjectivis *on adjectives*, nunquam *never* à verbis *on verbs* : ut *as*, Innatus amor a natural desire habendi of getting honey urget excites Cecropias apes the Attic bees. Æneas, celsâ in puppi in his tall ship jam certus already determined eundi to go.

96. Gerundia in do *gerunds in do* habent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* cum *with* dativis *datives* et *and* ablativis *ablatives* : ut *as*, Illud that commune est is common ediscendo to learning scribendoque and writing. Vitium the disease alitur is nourished vivitque and lives tegendo by being concealed.

(a.) Præpositio the preposition sine without nunquam usurpatur is never used cum gerundiis in do with gerunds in do.

97. Gerundia in dum *gerunds in dum* habent *have* eandem constructionem *the same construction* cum accusativis *with accusatives*, sed *but* semper exigunt *always require* præpositionem a preposition præcedentem *preceding them* : ut *as*, Locus a place amplissimus very honourable ad agendum to plead in. Mores puerorum the characters of boys detegunt se simplicius discover themselves with more plainness inter ludendum whilst they are playing.

98. Si if verbum the verb regit governs accusativum an accusative, gerundivum the gerundive sæpius usurpatur is oftener used quàm than gerundium the gerund : ut *as*, Timotheus Timotheus peritus fuit was skilful civitatis regendæ in governing a state. Duci to be persuaded præmio by a bribe ad accusandos homines to accuse men, est is proximum next ækin latrocinio to robbery.

(a.) Utor to use, fruor to enjoy, fungor to discharge, potior to gain, usurpantur are used eodem modo in the same manner : ut *as*, Olim formerly bene morati men of good character videntur appear reges constituti to have been

*appointed kings causâ for the sake fruendæ justitiæ of enjoying justice. Tradiderat ei he had given him omnia bona all his property utenda to be made use of.*

99. Gerundivum *the gerundive in nominativo in the nominative case (et and in accusativo in the accusative, cùm when verbum a verb infinitivi modi of the infinitive mood adjungitur is added vel or subauditur understood)* indicat *indicates necessitatem necessity, vel or officium propriety, vel or possibilitatem possibility* : ut *as, Orandum est one must pray ut sit mens sana to have a sound mind in corpore sano in a sound body. Diligentia industry est is præcipuè especially colenda to be cultivated nobis by us, et and semper adhibenda always to be employed. Putabat he thought eos them observandos to be attended to et colendos and respected à se by him.*

100. SUPINUM in um *the supine in um habet has activam significationem an active signification, et and sequitur follows verbum a verb significans signifying motum motion ad locum to a place* : ut *as, Veniunt they come spectatum to see, veniunt they come ut that ipsæ they themselves spectentur may be seen.*

101. Supinum in u *the supine in u habet has passivam significationem a passive signification, et and sequitur follows adjectiva adjectives* : ut *as, Quod that which est is foedum foul factu to be done, idem the same est is et also turpe shameful dictu to be spoken.*

102. VERBA *verbs quæ which non habent have not nominativum a nominative case, neque inflectuntur and are not declined ultra beyond tertiam personam singularem the third person singular et and infinitivum the infinitive, dicuntur are called impersonalia verbs impersonal* : ut *as, Hinc on one side tonat it thunders, hinc on the other æther the sky abruptitur is rent asunder missis ignibus by lightnings darted down.*

103. Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals, interest it concerns, et and refert it concerns, junguntur are joined quibuslibet genitivis to any genitive cases, et and his ablativis to these ablative cases, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ* : ut *as, Interest it concerns magistratûs the magistrate tueri to defend bonos the good. Tuâ refert it concerns you nôsse to know teipsum yourself.*

(a.) Et also hi genitivi *these genitive cases adduntur are*

*added, tanti so much, quanti how much, magni much, parvi little, pluris more, minoris less, et and similia similar words : ut as, Tanti refert of such concern it is agere to do honesta honest things.*

104. Verba impersonalia *impersonal verbs regunt govern casus cases pro sensu according to their meaning, more aliorum verborum like other verbs : ut as, Minimè decet it does not at all become oratorem an orator irasci to be angry. Licuit Themistocli it was in the power of Themistocles esse to be etioso indolent.*

105. Præpositio *ad the preposition ad propriè additur is peculiarly added his verbis to these verbs, attinet it belongs, pertinet it pertains, spectat it concerns : ut as, Vis would you have me me dicere to speak quod what attinet belongs ad te to you ?*

106. Decet *it becomes, attinet, et and spectat it concerns, quamvis although dicuntur they are called impersonalia impersonals sæpe often habent have nominativum a nominative case, et and sæpe inveniuntur are often found in tertiâ personâ plurali in the third person plural : ut as, Candida pax fair peace decet becomes homines men, trux ira savage passion feras wild beasts. Quæ things which nihil attinent are nothing to the purpose. Ea these things non spectant have no reference ad religionem to religion.*

107. Accusativus *an accusative case personæ of the person, cum genitivo with a genitive rei of the thing, subjicitur is put after his impersonalibus these verbs impersonal, pœnitet it repents, tædet it wearies, miseret it pities, pudet it shames, piget it grieves : ut as, Malo me pœniteat I had rather repent fortunæ of my fortune quam than pudeat be ashamed victoriæ of my victory. Non solum me piget I am not only sorry stultitiæ meæ for my folly, sed etiam but even pudet I am ashamed of it. Miseret nos we pity eorum them. Si if non pertæsum fuisset I were not weary thalami tædæque of the marriage bed and the marriage torch.*

(a.) Interdum *sometimes res the thing exprimitur is expressed vel either verbo infinitivi modi by a verb in the infinitive mood, vel or conjunctione with the conjunction quòd because et verbo and a verb : ut as, Non me pudet I am not ashamed fateri to confess nescire that I am ignorant quòd nesciam of what I am ignorant. Pœnitet me I repent quòd te offendi of having offended you.*

108. Pleraque passiva verba *most passive verbs* verti possunt *can be turned* in impersonalia *into impersonals* in tertiâ personâ singulari *in the third person singular*, et *and* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* dativum *a dative* agentis *of the agent*, vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition* (qui vero *which* however sæpius subauditur *is usually understood*;) eum vero casum *but that case* objecti *of the object* quem *which* verbum activum *the active verb* regit *governs*: ut *as*, Quo ruitis *whither are you rushing*, generosa domus *a noble family*? male creditur *it is folly to trust* hosti *an enemy*. Migratur *one migrates* morte *through death* in alium quendam locum *to some other place* ex his locis *from these places*.

109. QUÆ nouns which significant *signify* partem temporis *a part of time* ponuntur *are put* in ablativo *in the ablative case*: ut *as*, Nemo mortalium *no mortal man* sapit *is wise* omnibus horis *at all hours*.

110. Quæ nouns which significant *signify* durationem *the duration* temporis *of time*, ponuntur *are put* in accusativo *in the accusative case*: ut *as*, Hic *here* jam *from this time* regnabitur *kings shall reign* ter centum totos annos *full three hundred years*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* cùm *when* ætas hominis *the age of a man* significatur *is signified*, genitivus *the genitive* usurpatur *is used*: ut *as*, Hamilcar *Hamilcar* duxit secum *took with him* in Hispaniam *into Spain* filium Hannibalem *his son Hannibal* annorum novem *a boy of nine years old*.

(b.) Interdum *sometimes*, sed *but* perraro *very seldom*, duratio temporis *duration of time* significatur *is signified* per ablativum *by the ablative*: ut *as*, Panætius *Panætius* vixit *lived* triginta annis *thirty years* posteaquam *after* ediderat *he had published* libros *his books* de officiis *about duties*.

111. SPATIUM *the space* loci *of a place* ponitur *is put* in accusativo *in the accusative case* cùm *when* motus *motion* to a place significatur *is signified*; in ablativo *in the ablative*, cùm *when* statio *rest* in a place: ut *as*, Jam *now* processeram *I had advanced* mille passus *a mile*. Consedit *he encamped* millibus passuum *six miles* à Cæsaris castris *from Cæsar's camp*.

(a.) Interdum vero *but sometimes* accusativus *the accusative* usurpatur *is used* etiam *even* cùm *when* statio *rest* significatur *is signified*: ut *as*, Locat castra *he pitches his camp* mille fere



et quingentos passus *about a mile and a half* ab urbe *from the city*. Dicimus etiam *we say also*, Abest *he is distant* bidui *two days' journey* : ubi *where* itinere, vel or iter, subauditur *is understood*.

112. OMNE verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* genitivum *a genitive case* nominis *of the name* oppidi *of a city or town* in quo *in which* actio *fit any thing is done* ; modò *so that* sit *it be* primæ *of the first* vel or secundæ *declinationis the second declension*, et *and* singularis *numeri of the singular number* : ut *as*, Quid faciam *what shall I do* Romæ *at Rome* ?

(a.) Hi *genitivi these genitive cases*, domi *at home*, humi *upon the ground*, militiæ *in war*, belli *in war*, sequuntur *follow* formam *the construction* nominum *propriorum of proper names* : ut *as*, Præterea *besides* augeant rempublicam *let them strengthen the republic* quibuscunque rebus *in whatever matters* poterunt *they can* vel *either* belli *in war* vel or domi *at home*. Bos *the ox* procumbit *lies dead* humi *on the ground*. Fuimus *we were* semper *always* unà *together* militiæ *in war* et *and* domi *at home*.

113. Verùm *but* si *if* nomen *the name* oppidi *of a city or town* fuerit *shall be* pluralis *numeri of the plural number*, aut or tertiæ *declinationis of the third declension*, ponitur *it is put* in ablativo *in the ablative case* : ut *as*, Colchus *a Colchian*, an or Assyrius *an Assyrian*, nutritus *brought up* Thebis *at Thebes*, an or Argis *at Argos*. Ventosus *being inconstant*, Romæ *at Rome* amo *I love* Tibur *Tibur*, Tibure *at Tibur* Romam *I love Rome*.

114. Nomen *the name* oppidi *of a town* vel or insulæ *of an island* additur *is put* after verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place* in accusativo *in the accusative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition* : ut *as*, Atque *and* aliquis *some one* inquit *will say*, Jam nunc *now* then eat *let him go* doctas Athenas *to the learned Athens*.

(a.) Domus *a house* et *and* rus *the country* sequuntur *follow* hanc constructionem *this construction* : ut *as*, Capellæ *ye she-goats*, saturæ *being full*, ite domum *go home*, Hesperus *the evening* venit *approaches*, ite *be gone*. Ego *I* rus ibo *will go* into the country.

115. Nomen *the name* oppidi *of a town* vel or insulæ *of an island* additur *is put* after verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* à loco *from a place* in ablativo *in the ablative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition* : ut *as*, Nisi

profectus esses *if you had not gone* Româ *from Rome* antè *before*, relinqueres *you would leave* eam *it* nunc *now*.

(a.) Perraro *very seldom* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* præpositiones *prepositions* inveniuntur *are found* ante nomina *before the names* urbium *of cities*: ut *as*, Adolescens *while a youth* miles profectus sum *I went as a soldier* ad Capuam *to Capua*. Segesta *Segesta* condita est *was built* ab Æneâ *by Æneas* fugiente *when flying* à Trojâ *from Troy*.

(b.) Interdum etiam *sometimes even* regionum nomina *the names of countries* ponuntur *are put* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* in accusativo *in the accusative* vel or ablativo *in the ablative* pro sensu *according to the sense* sine præpositione *without a preposition*: ut *as*, Germanicus *Germanicus* proficiscitur *sets out* Ægyptum *for Egypt*. Dein *then* Piso *Piso* statuit *determined* abire *to depart* Syriâ *from Syria*.

(c.) Apud poetas *in the poets* quodvis substantivum *any substantive* quod *which* sequitur *follows* verbum motûs *a verb of motion* ad locum *to a place*, interdum ponitur *is sometimes put* in accusativo *in the accusative* case: ut *as*, Dido *Dido* et *and* dux Trojanus *the Trojan leader* deveniunt *come* to eandem speluncam *the same cave*. Refers *you utter* verba *words* non pervenientia *which do not reach* nostras aures *my ears*.

116. ADVERBIA *adverbs* loci *of place*, ubi *where*, ubique *everywhere*, ubicunque *everywhere*, usquam *anywhere*, nusquam *nowhere*, huc *hither*, eo *thither*, quo *whither*, et cætera *and the rest*, interdum *sometimes* habent post se *have after* them genitivos *the genitive cases* terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum, et *and* cùm *when* significant *they signify* gradum *degree*, alios genitivos *other genitives*: ut *as*, Ubicunque terrarum et gentium *in whatever country and nation* jus civium Romanorum *the rights of Roman citizens* violatum est *have been violated*, pertinet ad *it concerns* communem causam *the common cause* libertatis *of liberty*. Videmini *you seem* nescire *to be ignorant* quo amentis *to what a pitch of folly* progressi sitis *you have gone*. Venturus eram *I was about to come* eo miseriarum *to that degree of misery*.

(a.) Sic *so* post *after* tum, tunc, *then*, genitivus temporis *the genitive temporis* aliquando occurrit *sometimes occurs*, sed *but* non *not* apud optimos auctores *among the best authors*: ut *as*, Poteram *I could do* nihil *nothing* ampliùs *more* tunc temporis *at that time* quàm *than* flere *weep*.

117. *Pridie the day before et and postridie the day after* admittunt admit genitivum diei *the genitive diei post se after them, et and accusativum an accusative partium of the parts mensis of a month, vel or nominum of the names festorum of festivals* : ut *as, Pridie ejus diei the day before that day venit he came in Senatum into the Senate. Pridie calendas the day before the calends abiit he departed.*

118. Adverbia quantitatis *adverbs of quantity* admittunt admit genitivum *a genitive case* : ut *as, Satls eloquentiæ eloquence enough, sapientiæ parùm little wisdom.*

119. Quædam adverbia *some adverbs* admittunt admit eosdem casus *the same cases* qui *as* exiguntur *are required à* vocibus *by the words à* quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived* : ut *as, Sulpicius Gallus Sulpicius Gallus studuit Græcis literis studied Greek literature maximè most omnium nobilium of all the nobles. Exercitum habuit he kept his army quàm proximè as near as possible hostem to the enemy.*

120. Ergo *for the sake of* habet *has* genitivum *a genitive case post se after it* : ut *as, Donari to be rewarded ergo for the sake of virtutis virtue benevolentæque and kindness.*

121. Procul *far from* interdum *sometimes* jungitur *is joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* : ut *as, Multi many men gessere have managed suam rem their own affairs et publicam and those of the state benè well procul far patriâ from their country.*

(a.) Apud *poetas in the poets et and scriptores prose writers* serioris ævi *of a later age clam without the knowledge of, palam in the presence of, et and simul together with, junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case ; et and aliquando sometimes usque as far as cum accusativo with an accusative vel or ablativo an ablative* : ut *as, Clam without the knowledge of uxore meâ my wife et and filio my son. Simul his together with these dicere possum I may mention te you, candide Furni o excellent Furnius. Velabant they covered corpora their bodies usque pedes as far as their feet carbaso with linen.*

122. CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ *conjunctions copulative et and disjunctivæ disjunctive* conjungunt couple similes casus *the like cases, modos moods, et and tempora tenses* : ut *as, Socrates Socrates docuit taught Xenophontem Xenophon et and Platonem Plato. Nec scribit he neither writes nec legit nor reads. Occidit he has died flebilior more to be wept nulli by no one quàm than tibi by you, Virgili o Virgil.*

(a.) *Nisi unless ratio the reason variæ constructionis of a different construction poscat requires it should be aliud otherwise* : ut *as, Emi I bought librum a book centussi for a hundred pence et and pluris more. Vixi I lived Romæ at Rome et and Venetiis at Venice.*

123. *Poetæ the poets interdum sometimes usurpant use atque, pro for quàm than post comparativum after a comparative* : ut *as, Arctius atque closer than procera ilex the lofty ilex astringitur is bound hederæ to the ivy.*

124. *Cùm when comparatio comparison significatur is signified* ; tam *so, or as, sæpè often usurpatur is used, quàm as respondente answering to it* : ut *as, Vellem I wish tam possem I were as well able ferre to bear domestica my domestic griefs quàm as contemnere to despise ista those.*

125. *Cùm when significatur it is signified aliquid that anything maximum esse is the greatest quod fieri potest which can be, sæpè often superlativus the superlative usurpatur is used, quàm præcedente preceded by quam, interdum sometimes by quàm possum* : ut *as, Nihil fuit nothing was optabilius more desirable mihi to me quàm ut cognoscèrer than to be known esse to be quàm gratissimus as grateful as possible erga te towards you. Cæsar Cæsar contendit ad hostem proceeded towards the enemy quàm maximis potuit itineribus by as rapid marches as possible.*

(a.) *Pro quàm for quam ante superlativum maximus before the superlative maximus, quantus as great as aliquando usurpatur is sometimes used* : ut *as, Hannibal Hannibal efficit causes quantam maximam vastitatem potest as great devastation as he can cædibus by slaughter incendiisque and fires.*

126. *Donec, quoad, until, as long as, et and dum while, as long as, until, cùm when refertur ad tempus it has reference to time plerumque usually exigunt require indicativum modum an indicative mood, rarius more seldom subjunctivum a subjunctive* : ut *as, Dum while regna the kingdom Priami of Priam manebant lasted. Milo Milo fuit in Senatu was in the Senate eo die on that day quoad until Senatus the Senate dimissus est was adjourned. Donec until Marcellus Marcellus rediit returned, silentium fuit there was silence. Haud desinam I will not cease donec until perfecero I have finished. Dum until tertia æstas the third summer viderit shall have seen him regnantem reigning. Fortâsse perhaps expectas you are waiting dum until hæc dicat he says this.*

127. *Dummodo as long as (not of time) et and dum, vel or modo, usurpata when used pro for dummodo, junguntur are joined subjunctivo soli to a subjunctive mood only: ut as, Omnia postposui I thought everything of little consequence dummodo as long as parerem I could obey præceptis the precepts patris of my father. Oderint let them hate me dum provided that metuant they fear me. Manent ingenia their faculties remain senibus to old men modo provided studium study et industria and industry permaneat remain.*

128. *Quum since, as, significans signifying causam the cause vel or denotans denoting connectionem aliquam any connection duarum sententiarum between two sentences jungitur is joined subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood; si if usurpetur it be used pro for quòd because, indicativo to an indicative: ut as, Druentia the Durance, quum although vehat it comes down vim aquæ ingentem a great body of water, non tamen patiens est will not however bear navium vessels. Quum since vita life sine amicis without friends plena sit is full insidiarum of treachery et metûs and fear, ratio ipsa reason itself monet warns us comparare to form amicitias friendships. Præclare facis you do well quum tenes in preserving memoriam the recollection Luculli of Lucullus.*

129. *Quum as, sequente tum when followed by tum so, jungitur is joined interdum sometimes subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood, sæpius more frequently indicativo to an indicative: ut as, Quum multæ res as many things in philosophiâ in philosophy nequicquam satis explicatæ sint have been by no means sufficiently explained, tum so also quæstio the question de naturâ Deorum about the nature of the Gods perdifficilis est is very difficult. Quum cupio I both desire consequi to acquire ipsam cognitionem the knowledge juris augurii of the laws of sooth-saying, tum mehercule and in truth incredibiliter delector I am incredibly delighted tuis studiis with your studies.*

130. *Quum when, tempus significans meaning time, jungitur is joined interdum sometimes indicativo to the indicative, interdum sometimes subjunctivo to the subjunctive: ut as, Qui he who non propulsat does not repel injuriam injury a suis from his friends, quum potest when he can, injuste facit acts unjustly. Quinque nobiles juvenes five noble youths venerunt came ad Hannibalem to Hannibal quum esset when he was ad lacum Averni at lake Avernus. Erit illud profectò tempus the time indeed will come quum when desideres you will long for fidem the attachment gravissimi hominis of a most worthy man.*

131. Antequam et *and* priusquam *before that* junguntur *are joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood* si *if* res *the matter* est *is* in dubio *in doubt*, vel or si *if* duæ res *the two matters* de quibus agitur *which are spoken of* connectuntur *are connected*; aliter *otherwise* admittunt *they admit* indicativam *an indicative*: ut *as*, Tempestas *a tempest* minatur *threatens* antequam surgat *before it rises*. Omnia *all things* veneunt *are sold* antequam *before* una gleba *one clod of earth* ematur *is bought*. Quam benè *how happily* vivebant *men lived* Saturno rege *when Saturn was king*, priusquam *before* tellus *the earth* patefacta est *was levelled* in longas vias *into long roads*.

132. Quin et *and* quominus *but that* sequentia *following* negationem *a negation* vel or dubitationem *a doubt*, vel simile aliquid *or any similar expression*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Non dubitat *he does not doubt* quin *but that* Troja *Troy* peritura sit *will perish* brevi *in a short* time. Parmenio *Parmenio* voluit *wished* detertere *to deter* Philippum *Philip* quominus biberet *from drinking* medicamentum *the medicine*. Solitudines *solitude* non protegebant *did not protect* Tiberium *Tiberius* quin fateretur *from confessing* tormenta *the torments* pectoris *of his breast*.

133. Conjunctiones finales *the final conjunctions* ut *that*, quo *so that*, ne *that not*, et *and* aliæ *others* derivatæ *derived* ab his *from them*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Pylades *Pylades* dixit *said* se *that* he Oresten esse *was Orestes*, ut necaretur *that he might be put to death* pro illo *for him*. Oportet *it is desirable* legem *that a law* brevem esse *should be short* quo in order *that* facilius teneatur *it may be more easily comprehended* ab imperitis *by the ignorant*. Vereor *I fear* ne augeam *lest I may be increasing* tuum laborem *your trouble*.

134. Ut, cùm *when* significat *it signifies* tempus *time* vel or comparationem *a comparison*, habet *has* indicativum *an indicative mood* post se *after it*: ut *as*, Ut *since* sumus *we have been* in Ponto *in Pontus*, Ister *the Danube* ter constitit *has thrice been stopped* frigore *by cold*. Ut *as* columbæ *doves*, timidissima turba *a most timid band*, fugiunt *fly from* aquilam *an eagle*.

(a.) Ut, pro *for* ubi *where*, (rarus est usus *it is a rare usage*) jungitur *is joined* indicativo *to an indicative*: ut *as*, Ut *where* littus *the shore* tunditur *is beaten* longè resonante Eoâ *undâ* by the far-sounding Eastern wave.

135. Ut, pro *for* quamvis *although*, jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood* : ut *as*, Ut *although* fueris *you were* dignior *the more worthy*, competitor *your competitor* non est in culpâ *is not in fault*.

136. Utinam *I wish that* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood* : ut *as*, Utinam *I wish that* tu quoque *you also* mutabilis *esses were changeable* cum ventis *as well as the winds*. Utinam *I wish* ne verè scriberem illud *I did not write that with truth*.

137. Licet *although* jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood* ; quamvis *although* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive* sæpius *oftener* quam *than* indicativo *to an indicative*, nisi *except* apud poetas *among the poets* ; quanquam *although* indicativo *to an indicativesæpius oftener* quam *than* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive* ; etsi *although* vel *either* indicativo *to an indicative* vel *or* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive* : ut *as*, Improbitas *dishonesty* licet *although* molesta sit *it be troublesome* adversario *to one's adversary* invisa est *is hateful* judici *to the judge*. Id quod turpe est *that which is base*, quamvis *although* occultetur *it may be concealed*, tamen nullo modo potest fieri *can by no means be rendered* honestum *honourable*. Romani *the Romans*, quanquam *although* fessi erant *they were weary* prælio *of fighting*, tamen yet procedunt *advance*. Viri boni *good men* faciunt *do* multa *many things* ob eam causam *quod* decet *because it is right*, etsi *although* vident *they see* nullum emolumentum *no advantage* consecuturum *likely to ensue*.

138. Si *if* et *and* nisi *unless*, cùm *when* indicatur *it is indicated* rem *that the thing* de quâ agitur *of which one is speaking* vel *existere either exists*, vel *posse existere or may exist*, junguntur *are joined* indicativo modo *to the indicative mood*, vel *or præsentî to the present* vel *perfecto or perfect tense* subjunctivi *of the subjunctive* ; cùm *when* indicatur *it is indicated* rem *that the thing* non *existere does not exist*, exigunt *they require* imperfectum *the imperfect* vel *or plusquam perfectum the plusquam-perfect* subjunctivi *of the subjunctive* : ut *as*, Debebas colere *you ought to respect* hunc *this man* patri loco *as you would your father*, si *if* esset *there were* ulla pietas *any piety* in te *in you*. Si *if* unquam *ever* visus sum *I have appeared* tibi *to you* fortis *brave*, certe *certainly* me admiratus *esses you would have admired me* in illâ causâ *in that cause*. Tu cave *do you beware*, nisi *unless* debes ludibrium *you are bent on becoming the sport* ventis *of the winds*. Multa *many*

*things dehortantur me tend to divert me à vobis from you, nisi unless studium my affection reipublicæ for the republic superet overpowered them.*

139. Quasi, tanquam, *as if*, et similia *and similar words*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Quid *why* ego utor *do I use* his testibus *these witnesses* quasi *as if* res *the matter* incerta esset *were uncertain* ac *and* dubia *doubtful*. Cogitandum est *we ought to regulate our thoughts* sic *so* tanquam *as if* aliquis *any one* possit inspicere *were able to look in* intimum pectus *into our inmost hearts*.

140. Quòd, quia, *because*, quoniam *since*, junguntur *are joined* indicativo *to an indicative mood* cùm *when* indicant *they indicate* opinionem *the opinion* loquentis *of the speaker*; cùm *when* aliorum *that of others*, subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*: ut *as*, Refugit te *he flies from you* quia *because* rugæ *wrinkles* et *and* capitis nives *snowy hair* turpant *disfigure* you. Panætius *Panætius* laudat *praises* Africanum *Africanus* quòd *because* abstinens fuerit *he was temperate*.

141. Utrum, ne, an, num, cùm *when* significant *they signify* dubitationem *a doubt* vel *or* obliquam interrogationem *an indirect question*, postulant *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*, etiamsi *even if* conjunctio ipsa *the conjunction itself* subaudiatur *be understood*: ut *as*, Difficile dictu est *it is difficult to say* utrum *whether* hostes *the enemy* pugnantes *while fighting* timuerint *feared* virtutem *the valour* Pompeii *Pompey* magis *more*, an *or* victi *when conquered* dilexerint *loved* mansuetudinem *his clemency*. Legati *the ambassadors* jussi sunt *were ordered* speculari *to see* num *whether* animi *the dispositions* sociorum *of the allies* sollicitati essent *had been tampered with* a rege Perseo *by king Perseus*. Nihil interest *it does not signify* doleam *whether I grieve* necne doleam *or do not grieve*.

142. Ne, cùm *when* prohibet *it forbids*, jungitur *is joined* imperativo *to an imperative* vel *or* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Ne temne do *not despise* us quòd *because* ultro *of our own accord* præferimus *we bring* vittas *fillets* manibus *in our hands*. Tu ne quæsieris *do not you enquire* quem finem *what end* Dî *the Gods* dederint *have assigned* mihi *to me*, quem tibi *or to you*.

143. Omnes voces *all words* quæ *which* expriment *express* rogationem *a mere question* junguntur *are joined*

R



indicativo to an indicative mood : ut as, Tunc did you veritus es fear id that? Num piget eum is he sorry facti for his deed? Quis fuit who was he qui primus who first protulit produced horrendos enses horrible swords?

144. QUI who significans signifying causam the cause exigit requires subjunctivum a subjunctive mood : ut as, Clusini the Clusians misere sent legatos ambassadors Romam to Rome qui peterent to beg for auxilium aid a Senatu from the Senate. Voluptas pleasure non est digna is not worthy ad quam sapiens respiciat that a wise man should regard it.

145. Cùm vero but when relativa propositio a relative proposition supplet locum supplies the place substantivi of a substantive, verbum the verb ponitur is put in indicativo in the indicative : ut as, Num alii oratores is one class of orators probantur approved of à multitudine by the multitude, alii another ab iis qui intelligunt (i.e. à sapientibus) by intelligent people? Placavi I appeased quoscumque audiavi all whom I heard querentes complaining de te of you.

146. Omnes voces all words positæ placed indefinitely indefinitely, vel or in obliquâ oratione in an indirect sentence, vel or sententiâ in a sentence pendente ab aliâ depending on another, postulant require subjunctivum a subjunctive mood : ut as, Innocentia innocence est is talis affectio such a disposition animi of mind quæ as noceat hurts nemini no one. Video I see cui scribam to whom I am writing. Credite believe experto one who has tried quantus how (with what might) assurgat he rises in clypeum against the shield, quo turbine with what force torqueat he hurls hastam the spear.

147. PRÆPOSITIONES the prepositions adversum adversus against, cis citra on this side, apud near, ante before, penesque and in the power of, intra within, infra below, contra against, supra above, post after, circiter about (of time,) inter between, or among, circa circum around, ultra beyond, juxta near, erga towards, præter besides, or except, et and extra without, ob on account of, prope near, per through, propter on account of, and near, versus towards, trans across, pone behind, secundum according to, ad to, regunt govern accusativum an accusative : ut as, Quem penes in whose power arbitrium the decision is. Ter thrice raptaverat he had hurried Hectora Hector circum around Iliacos muros the Trojan walls Propter near aquas

*the waters.* Amicitia friendship expetenda est is to be sought propter se for its own sake. Fugiens flying from pauperiem poverty per mare over the sea. Ludi games facti sunt were celebrated per decem dies for ten days. Per me unum by my means alone effectum est has it been caused ut that libertas liberty maneret remains in civitate in the city. Sophocles Sophocles fecit tragœdias composed tragedies ad summam senectutem till extreme old age. Locavi castra I pitched my camp ad Cybistra at Cybistra. Aliquot post menses after some months venit he came ad Cæsarem to Cæsar. Atra cura ill-omened care sedet sits post equitem behind the horseman. Cæsar Cæsar transduxit led copias suas his forces præter castra by the camp. Condemnatus est he was condemned omnibus sententiis by all the votes præter unam but one.

148. A (ante vocalem before a vowel ab) from, absque, sine without, coram in the presence of, cum with, de concerning or from, e (ante vocalem before a vowel ex) out of, præ before, for, pro for, in front of, regunt govern ablativum an ablative: ut as, A te from you is principium the beginning, desinet it shall end tibi with you. Discordia est mihi I have a quarrel tecum with you. Infans an infant animosus spirited non sine Dis not without the favour of the Gods. Non potuit loqui he could not speak præ mœrore for fear. Stabat he was standing pro templo in front of the temple et and tenebat was occupying Capitolia celsa the lofty Capitol. Cuncta everything erant was pro hostibus in favour of the enemy. E consulatu from his consulship profectus est he went in Galliam into Gaul. Gessimus we have administered rempublicam the republic feliciter successfully, et and ex meâ sententiâ according to my wish.

149. In, super, sub, et and subter (quod tamen which however rarò invenitur is seldom found) regunt govern accusativum an accusative vel or ablativum an ablative pro sensu according to the sense in which they are used: ut as, Imperium the empire Jovis of Jupiter est is in reges ipsos over kings themselves. Venit he came in Senatum into the Senate. Lucus fuit there was a grove in arce summâ in the highest part of the citadel. Proferet he shall extend imperium his dominion super beyond et both Garamantas the Garamantes et and Indos the Indians. Rogitans asking multa many things super Priamo about Priam, multa many super Hectore about Hector.

Venator *the huntsman* manet *remains* sub Jove frigido *under the cold sky*. Sub eas literas *after those letters* tuæ *yours* statim sunt recitatæ *were immediately read*. Multaque *and many things* me fugiunt *are forgotten by me* spectata *which were seen* primis sub annis *in my earliest years*. Exercitus ejus *his army* missus est *was sent* sub jugum *under the yoke*. Duxit *he led* Æneam *Æneas* subter fastigia *under the roof* augusti tecti *of a small house*. Tuti safe subter *under* densâ testudine *a thick penthouse of shields*.

150. Tenus *as far as* regit *governs* ablativum singularem *an ablative singular*, ablativum vel genitivum pluralem *an ablative or genitive plural*, et *and* semper *always* sequitur *follows* casum suum *its case* : ut *as*, Abdidit ensem *he plunged his sword* lateri *in his side* capulo tenus *up to the hilt*. Et *and* paleari *his dewlap* pendent *hangs down* à mento *from his chin* crurum tenus *as far as his legs*. Altera sagitta *the second arrow* acta est *was driven* per jugulum *through his throat* pennis tenus *up to the feathers*.

151. Præpositio *a preposition* in compositione *in composition* nonnunquam *sometimes* regit *governs* eundem casum *the same case* quem *which* regebat *it governed* extra compositionem *out of composition* : ut *as*, Detrudunt *they thrust off* naves *the ships* scopula *from the rock*. Prætereunt *they pass* scopulos *the rocks* Ithacæ *of Ithaca*.

152. Verba *verbs* composita *compounded* cum *with* à, ab, ad, con, de, et *and* aliis præpositionibus *other prepositions*, sæpe *often* repetunt *repeat* eandem præpositionem *the same preposition* : ut *as*, Abstinerunt *they abstained* à vino *from wine*.

153. INTERJECTIONES *interjections* non raro ponuntur *are often put* sine casu *without a case* : ut *as*, Connixa *having yearned* reliquit *she left* spem gregis *the hope of the flock*, ah alas ! silice in nudâ *upon the bare flint stones*.

154. O, vocantis *uttered by one calling* jungitur *is joined* vocativo *to a vocative case*, exclamantis *by one exclaiming* vocativo *to a vocative* vel *or* accusativo *an accusative* : ut *as*, O nimium fortunatos agricolas *O too fortunate husbandmen*, si nōrint *if they knew* sua bona *their own happiness* ! O formose puer *O beautiful boy*, ne crede *trust not* nimium too much *colori to your beauty*.

155. Heu, et *and* proh *alas* ! junguntur *are joined* accusativo *to an accusative*, vel *or* vocativo *to a vocative* : ut *as*, Heu pietas *alas his piety* ! Heu prisca fides *alas the ancient integrity* ! Heu stirpem invisam *alas the odious stock* ! Proh fidem *alas the help* deum *of gods* atque *and* hominum *of men* ! Proh sancte Jupiter *O sacred Jupiter* !

156. Hei, et *and* vœ *alas*, junguntur *are joined* dativo *to a dative case* : ut *as*, Hei mihi *woe is me*, quod *that* amor *love* est *is* medicabilis *curable* nullis herbis *by no herbs* ! Vœ misero mihi *wretched man that I am*, quantâ de spe *from how great hope* decidi *am I fallen* !

157. En et *and* ecce *behold* junguntur *are joined* nominativo *to a nominative* vel *or* accusativo *to an accusative case* : ut *as*, Ecce tibi *behold* Italiæ tellus *the land of Italy*. En *behold* quatuor aras *four altars* ; ecce *behold* duas *two* tibi *for you*, Daphni *Daphnis*, duoque altaria *and two altars* Phœbo *for Apollo*.

## PROSODIA CONSTRUED.

**PROSODIA** *prosody* est *is pars that part* Grammaticæ of Grammar, quæ *which* docet *teaches* quantitatem *the quantity* (or, *due sound*) syllabarum of syllables.

Prosodia *prosody* dividitur *is divided* in tres partes *into three parts*; tonum *the tone*, spiritum *the breathing*, et *and* tempus *the time*.

Hoc loco *in this place* visum est nobis *it is thought* most proper tractare *to treat* tantum *only* de tempore of time.

**TEMPUS** *time* est *is* mensura *the measure* syllabæ proferendæ of a syllable to be uttered (or, of the pronouncing a syllable.)

Tempus breve *a short time* notatur *is distinguished* sic *thus* (˘): ut *as* for example, Dōminūs *the Lord*; autem *but* longum *a long time* sic *in this manner* (—): ut *as*, cōtrā *against*.

Pes *a foot* est *is* constitutio *the placing together* duarum syllabarum of two syllables pluriumve or more ex certâ observatione according to the certain observation temporum of the times (or, measures of the syllables.)

Pes *a foot* duarum longarum syllabarum of two long syllables est *is* spondæus *a spondee*; ut *as*, virtus *virtue*.

Longa syllaba *a long syllable* duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus *with two short syllables following* efficit *makes* dactylum *a dactyl*; ut *as*, scribere *to write*.

**SCANSIO** *scanning* est *is* legitima commensuratio *the measuring according to rule* versus of a verse in singulos pedes in every one (or, each one) of the feet.

Scansioni *to scanning* a verse accidunt *there belong* figuræ *the figures* called Synalæpha, Ecthipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, et *and* Cæsura.

I. Synalæpha, est *is* elisio *the striking out* vocalis of a vowel in fine *at the end* dictionis of a word ante alteram before another vowel in initio *at the beginning* sequentis of the following word; ut *as*, vit' viv' *are here put* pro *for* vita vive, in this verse: Crastina vita *to-morrow's life* est *is* nimis *too* sera *late*, vive live hodie *to-day*.

At *but* *heu*, et *and* *ô*, nunquam intercipiuntur. *are never struck out (or, cut off.)*

II. Ecclipsis, est is quoties *as often as* in the letter *m* perimitur *is cut off* cum suâ vocali *with its vowel*, proximâ dictione *the next word* exorsâ *beginning* a vocali *with a vowel*; ut *as*, Monstr' horrend' *pro for* monstrum horrendum: Monstrum *a monster* horrendum *horrible*, informe *mis-shapen*, ingens *vast*, cui lumen ademptum *deprived of sight*.

III. Synæresis, est is contractio *the contraction* duarum syllabarum *of two syllables* in unam *into one*: ut *as*, alvearia *is pronounced* quasi scriptum esset *as if it had been written* alvaria: ut *as*, Seu *or whether* alvearia *the hives* texta fuerint *were wove* lento vimine *of the limber osier*.

IV. Diæresis, est is ubi *when* ex unâ syllabâ *of one syllable* dissectâ *being dissected (or, the letters separated)* duæ *two* syllabæ fiunt *are made*: ut *as*, evoluisse *pro for* evoluisse: ut *as*, Debuerant *they ought* evoluisse *to have unwound* suos fusos *their spindles*.

V. Cæsura, est is cùm *when* post pedem absolutum *after a perfect foot* syllaba brevis *a short syllable* extenditur *is made long* in fine dictionis *at the end of the word*: ut *as*, Inhians *intent upon* pectoribus *the breasts (of the victims)* consulit *she consults* spirantia exta *their panting entrails*.

### Of the Kinds of Verses.

VERSUS heroicus *an heroic verse*, qui *which* dicitur etiam *is also called* Hexameter *an Hexameter*, constat *consists* ex sex pedibus *of six feet*: Quintus locus *the fifth place* of the verse peculiariter *peculiarly* sibi vindicat *claims to itself* dactylum *a dactyl*, sextus *the sixth place* requires spondæum *a spondee*; reliqui *the other places* hunc vel illum *have this or that* foot (either *a dactyl or a spondee*) prout volumus *even as we will*: ut *as*, Tityre o Tityrus, tu thou recubans *lying* along sub tegmine *under the covering* patulæ fagi *of a wide-spreading beech-tree*.

Spondæus *a spondee* etiam aliquando *sometimes* reperitur *is found* in quinto loco *in the fifth place*: ut *as*, Cara soboles *thou dear offspring* deum *of the gods*, magnum incrementum *the illustrious progeny* Jovis *of Jupiter*!

Ultima syllaba *the last syllable* cujuscunque versûs *of every verse* habetur *is accounted* communis *common*.

VERSUS elegiacus *an elegiac verse*, qui et *which also* habet *hath* nomen *the name* Pentametri *of Pentameter*, constat *consisteth* è duplici Penthemimeri *of two Penthemimers*; quarum prior *the former of which* comprehendit *contains* duos pedes *two feet*, dactylicos *dactyls*, spondiacos *spondees*, vel *or* alterutros *either of them*, cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable*: altera *the other Penthemimer* etiam *contains also* duos pedes *two feet*, sed *but* omninò dactylicos *always* (*or, altogether*) *dactyls*, item *likewise* cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable*: ut *as*, Amor *love* est *is* res *a thing* plena *full* solliciti timoris *of anxious fear*.

### *Of the Quantity of first Syllables.*

I. Vocalis *a vowel* ante duas consonantes *before two consonants*, aut *or* duplicem *a double consonant* in eâdem dictione *in the same word*, est *is* ubique longa *every where long* positione *by position*: ut *as in the words*, ventus *the wind*, axis *an axle-tree*, patrizo *to do like his father*.

II. Quòd si *but if* consonans *a consonant* claudat *endeth* priorem dictionem *the former word*, sequente *the following word* item *also* inchoante *beginning* a consonante *with a consonant*, vocalis præcedens *the vowel going before* etiam *also* longa erit *will be long* positione *by position*: ut *as*, Major sum *I am greater* quàm *than* cui *one whom* fortuna *fortune* possit *is able* nocere *to hurt*. Syllabæ *the syllables* jor, sum, quàm, et *and* sit, longæ sunt *are here long* positione *by position*.

(a.) At si *but if* prior dictio *the former word* exeat *ends* in vocalem brevem *in a short vowel*, sequente *the following word* incipiente *beginning* à duabus consonantibus *with two consonants*, interdum *sometimes* producitur *it is made long*, sed *but* rariùs *very seldom*: ut *as*, Ferte bring ferrum *arms* citi *promptly*, date tela *hurl your javelins*, scandite muros *scale the walls*.

III. Vocalis brevis *a short vowel* ante mutam *before a mute*, sequente liquidâ *a liquid following*, redditur *is rendered* communis *common*: ut *as in the words*, patris *of a father*, volucris *of a bird*. Quæ tamen regula *which rule* however non obtinet *does not prevail* in compositis *in compound words*: ut *as*, âdmiror *I admire*, âbripio *I carry off*, sùbruo *I overthrow*, ôbruo *I overthrow*.

**VOCALIS** *a vowel ante alteram before another vowel in eâdem dictione in the same word est is ubique brevis every where short* : ut *as in the words, Deus God, meus mine, tuus thine, pius pious.*

1. *Excipias you may except genitivos the genitive cases in ius ending in ius* : ut *as, unius of one, illius of that, &c. and some others* ; ubi *in which words i the vowel i reperitur is found communis common* ; licet *although in alterius in the word alterius of another semper sit it is always brevis short* ; in alius *in the word alius of another semper longa it is always long.*

2. *Excipiendi sunt etiam except likewise genitivi the genitive cases et and dativi the dative quintæ declinationis of the fifth declension, ubi e where the vowel e inter geminum i between two i's longa fit is made long* ; ut *as in the word, faciei of a face* : alioqui *non otherwise not* ; ut *as in the words, rei of a thing, spei of hope, fidei of faith.*

*Etiam also si the syllable fi in fio in the word fio to be made or done est longa is long* ; nisi *unless e et r the letters e and r sequuntur follow simul together* ; ut *as in fierem, fieri* : Jam *now omnia all things fiunt are done, quæ which negabam I denied posse were able fieri to be done.*

*Dius heavenly habet hath primam syllabam the first syllable longam long* ; *Diana the goddess Diana communem hath the first syllable common.*

*Interjectio Ohe the interjection ohe habet has priorem syllabam the former syllable communem common* ; *eheu alas semper always producit penultimam makes the penultima long.*

*Vocalis a vowel ante alteram before another in Græcis dictionibus in Greek words subinde now and then fit longa is made long* : ut *as, Dicite, Pierides say, O ye Muses* : *Respice Laërten have regard to Laertes.*

*Et and also in Græcis possessivis in Greek possessives* : ut *as, Æneia nutrix Æneas' nurse, Rhodopeïus Orpheus Orpheus of Rhodope.*

*Omnis diphthongus every diphthong longa est is long apud Latinos with the Latins* : ut *as, aurum gold, neuter neither, musæ of a song, or songs* : nisi *except sequente vocali when a vowel followeth, cùm when interdum sometimes corripitur it is made short* : ut *as, præire to go before, præustus burnt at one end.*



**DERIVATIVA** *derivatives* (or, words derived of others<sup>1</sup> ferè commonly sortiuntur have eandem quantitatem the same quantity cum primitivis with their primitives (or, the words they are derived from :) ut *as*, amator a lover, amicus a friend, amabilis amiable; primâ brevi the first syllable being short ab amo *as* being derived from the verb amo I love.

Excipiuntur tamen except however pauca a few words, quæ which deducta being derived a brevibus from short syllables, producunt make long primam syllabam the first syllable: ut *as*, como to deck the hair, a coma derived from coma the hair; fomes fuel et and fomentum an assuaging plaister a from foveo to cherish; humanus human, or humane, ab homo derived from homo a man or woman; jucundus pleasant, a from juvo to delight; jumentum a beast of burthen, a from juvo to help; lex legis a law, a from lego to read; macero to cause to waste away, a from macer thin; mobilis moveable, a from moveo to move; persona a mask, a from persono to sound through; rex regis a king, regina a queen, regula a rule, a from rego to rule; secius (comparative) a from secus otherwise; sedes a seat, a from sedeo to sit; stipendium pay a from stips stipis a coin; tegula a tile, a from tego to cover; tragula a javelin (also a drag-net,) a from traho to draw; vox vocis a voice, a from voco to call.

Et and contrâ on the other hand sunt there are some words quæ which deducta though derived a longis from primitives of a long syllable, corripiunt make short primam the first syllable: ut *as*, arena sand, arista the beard of corn, arundo a reed, ab derived from areo to be dry; aruspex a soothsayer, ab derived from ara an altar; dicax a jester, maledicus speaking ill, a from dico to speak; ditio power, a from ditis rich; dux ducis a leader, a from duco to lead; fides faith, perfidus perfidious, a from fido to trust; fragor a noise or crash, fragilis frail, a from frango to break; labo to totter, a from labor to slip; lucerna a candle, a from luceo to shine; molestus troublesome, a from moles trouble; odium hatred, ab from odi to hate; paciscor to bargain, a from pax pacis peace; quandoquidem since, a from quando when; siquidem since, a from si if; sopor a sound sleep, a from sopio to lull to sleep.

Et and alia nonnulla some other words ex utroque genere of either sort, quæ which relinquuntur are left observanda to be observed studiosis by the studios inter legendum in their reading.

**COMPOSITA** *compound words sequuntur follow* quantita-  
tem *the quantity simplicium of their simple words*: ut *as,*  
from *lego legis to read, comes perlego to read through; à from*  
*lego legas to send as an ambassador, allego to allege ~ accuse*  
*by messengers; à from potens powerful, impotens weak; à*  
*from solor to cheer, consolor to comfort.*

**Hæc tamen brevia** *but these words having short syllables*  
*enata though derived a longis from long syllables excipiuntur*  
*are excepted*: ut *as, deiero to swear a great oath, peiero to*  
*forswear, a from juro to swear; innuba unmarried, pronuba*  
*a bride's-maid, a from nubo to be married.*

**OMNE præteritum** *every preterperfect tense dissyllabum*  
*of two syllables habet hath priorem the former syllable longam*  
*long*: ut *as, legi I have read, emi I have bought, movi I have*  
*moved.*

1. **Excipias tamen** *but you must except the words, bibi I*  
*drank, dedi I gave, scidi I have cut, steti I have stood, stiti I*  
*have stayed, tuli I have borne or suffered, et and fidi, a from*  
*findo to cleave.*

2. **Geminantia words** *that double primam the first syllable*  
*præteriti of the preterperfect tense habent have primam the*  
*first syllable brevem short*: ut *as, cecidi I have fallen, à from*  
*cado to fall; cecidi I have beaten, a from cædo to beat; didici*  
*I have learned, fefelli I have deceived, momordi I have bitten,*  
*pependi I have weighed, pupugi I have pricked, tetendi I have*  
*stretched, tetigi I have touched, totondi I have sheared, tutudi*  
*I have thumped.*

**SUPINUM dissyllabum** *a supine of two syllables habet*  
*hath priorem the former syllable longam long*: ut *as, visum*  
*to see, latum to bear or suffer, lotum to wash, motum to move.*

**Excipe except datum** *to give, itum to go, litum to daub,*  
*ratum to suppose, rutum to rush, satum to sow, situm to*  
*suffer, statum to stop, et and citum, a from cieo cies to stir*  
*up; nam for citum, a from cio cis to make to go, quartæ of*  
*the fourth conjugation, habet hath priorem the former syllable*  
*longam long.*

**Penultima** *the last syllable but one tertiæ personæ pluralis*  
*of the third person plural perfecti activi of the perfect active*  
*desinens ending in -erunt habenda est is to be considered*  
*communis common, si if antepenultima the syllable before it*  
*brevis sit be short.*

### Of the Quantity of last Syllables,

I. A FINITA words ending in a producuntur are made long : ut as, ama love thou, contra against, erga towards.

Excipias except, ita so, quia because, eia well. Item also omnes casus all cases in a ending in a, cujuscunque fuerint generis of whatever gender they are, numeri number, aut or declinationis declension ; præter except vocativos the vocative cases à Græcis in as of Greek words ending in as : ut as, O Ænea o Æneas : et and ablativum the ablative case primæ declinationis of the first declension : ut as, musâ with a song.

II. Desinentia words ending in b, d, t, puris pure, brevia sunt are short : ut as, ab from, ad to, caput the head.

III. Desinentia in c words ending in c producuntur are made long : ut as, ac and, sic so, et and adverbium the adverb hic here.

Sed but fac do thou, nec neither, donec until, corripiuntur are made short.

Pronomen the pronoun hic he, et and neutrum ejus its neuter hoc, modo so that non sit it be not ablativi casûs of the ablative case, communia sunt are common.

IV. Finita e words ending in e brevia sunt are short : ut as, mare the sea, pene almost, lege read thou, scribe write thou.

1. Omnes voces all words quintæ inflectionis of the fifth declension in e ending in e excipiendæ sunt are to be excepted : ut as, fide the ablative case of fides faith, et and die in the day, unâ cum particulis together with the particles indè enatis that are derived from it : ut as, hodie to-day, quotidie daily, pridie the day before, postridie the day after ; item also quare wherefore, et and si qua sunt similia if there be any of the like sort.

2. Et item and also secundæ personæ singulares the second persons singular secundæ conjugationis of the second conjugation : ut as, doce teach, move move : præter except cave beware, quod which plerumque generally corripit ultimam makes the last syllable short.

Etiam also monosyllaba monosyllables in e ending in e producuntur are made long : ut as, me me, te thee, se himself or themselves : præter except conjunctiones encliticas the enclitical conjunctions, que and, n whether, ve or.

Quin et *and moreover* adverbia *adverbs* in *e* ending in *e*, deducta *derived* ab *adjectivis* *from adjectives* secundæ declinationis *of the second declension*, habent *have* *e* the letter *e* longum *long*: ut *as*, pulchre *beautifully*, docte *learnedly*, valde *pro for* valide *mightily*.

Quibus *to which the adverbs* ferme, fere, *almost* accedunt *are added*: tamen *yet* bene *well* et *and* male *ill* omnino corripiuntur *are always made short*.

Postremo *lastly*, quæ *such words as* scribuntur *are written* in Græcis per *η* with the Greek letter *η* (or, long *e*) producuntur *are long* naturâ *by nature*, cujuscunque fuerint casûs *of whatever case they are*, generis *gender*, aut or numeri *number*: ut *as*, Lethe *the river so called*, Anchise *a proper name*, cete *whales*, Tempe *the name of a pleasant valley in Thessaly*.

V. Finita *i* words ending in *i* longa sunt *are long*: ut *as*, domini *lords*, magistri *masters*, amari *to be loved*.

Præter *except* mihi *to me*, tibi *to thee*, sibi *to himself or themselves*, ubi *where*, ibi *there*; quæ *which words* sunt *are communia* *common*.

Nisi *except*, et *and* quasi *as if*, corripiuntur *are made short*.

Dativi quoque *also the dative* et vocativi singulares *and vocative cases singular* nominum propriorum *of proper names* in *is* ending in *is* derivatorum *derived* a Græcis *from the Greeks*, quorum genitivus *whose genitive* crescit *increases* penultimâ brevi *with a short penultima*, corripiuntur *are short*: ut *as*, dativi *the dative cases* Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi; vocativi *the vocative cases* Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni, *all proper names*.

VI. Finita *l* words ending in *l* corripiuntur *are made short*: ut *as*, animal *an animal*, Hannibal *a proper name*, mel *honey*, pugil *a champion*, consul *a consul*.

Præter *except the words* nil (*contractum contracted* a *from* nihil *nothing*,) sal *salt*, et *and* sol *the sun*.

VII. N finita words ending in *n* corripiuntur *are short*: ut *as*, an *whether*, carmen *a song*, in *in*, Ilion *Troy*, Ityn *Itys*.

Quin *moreover*, non *not*, excipiuntur *are excepted*; et *and* nomina pauca *a few nouns* derivata *derived* a Græcis *from the Greeks*, quæ *which* producunt *lengthen* penultimam *the penultima* genitivi *of the genitive*: ut *as*, delphin *delphinis* a *dolphin*; Xenophon *Xenophontis* *Xenophon*.

Accusativi quoque *also the accusative cases* masculini *masculine* primæ declinationis *of the first declension* in an et en *ending in and en* producuntur *are made long*: ut as, *Enean Aeneas*, Anchisen *Anchises*; et *and* accusativi fœminini *feminine accusatives* in en et ran in en and ran: ut as, Penelopen *Penelope*, Electran *Electra*: cæteri fœminini *the other feminine accusatives* in an *ending in an* corripiuntur *are short*: ut as, Maian *Maia*, Iphigenian *Iphigenia*.

VIII. O finita *words ending in o* longa sunt *are long*: ut as, dico *I say*, virgo *a virgin*, porro *moreover*, legendo *in reading*.

Modo *only* et *and* composita ejus *its compounds* excipiuntur *are excepted*; et *and* scio *I know*, nescio *I know not*, puto *I suppose*, cito *soon*, ego *I*, homo *a man*, cedo *tell me*, quæ *which* corripiuntur *are short*.

(a.) Pauca alia sunt verba *there are a few other verbs* in o desinentia *ending in o* quæ *which* interdum *sometimes* corripiunt *shorten* ultimam *the last syllable*: ut as, Te peto *I demand you quem whom* merui *I have deserved*. Non ero *I will not be*, terra *o earth*, tuus *yours*. Fassa *confessing* fortunam *her fortune* tegendo *by covering* vultus suos *her face*. Sed *but* hæc exempla *these examples* non sunt *are not* imitanda *to be imitated* à tironibus *by beginners*.

Propria nomina *proper names* virorum *of men* desinentia in o *ending in o* communia sunt *are common*: ut as, Pollio, Nas o.

Duo quoque *also* duo *two* et *and* nemo *nobody* habent *have* ultimam *the last syllable* communem *common*.

IX. Finita r *words ending in r* corripiuntur *are made short* ut as, Cæsar *a proper name*, per *by*, vir *a man*, uxor *a wife*, turtur *a turtle*.

Autem *but (these words)* producuntur *are made long*; far *bread-corn*, Lar *an household god*, Nar *the river so called*, ver *the spring*, fur *a thief*, cur *why*; quoque *also* par *equal to* or *like* cum compositis *with its compounds*: ut as, compar *a companion*, impar *unequal*, dispar *unlike*.

Græca etiam *also* Greek words in er *ending in er*, quæ *which* illis *among them* desinunt *end in* ηρ *in the long ē before r*; ut as, ær *the air*, crater *a cup*, character *a mark or sign*, æther *the sky*; præter *except* pater *a father* et *and* mater *a mother*, quæ *which* apud Latinos *with Latin authors* habent *have* ultimam *the last syllable* brevem *short*.

X. *Finitas words ending in s habent have pares terminations the like terminations cum numero with the number vocalium of the vowels ; nempe namely, as, es, is, os, us, ys.*

I. *As finitas words ending in as producuntur are made long . ut as, amas thou lovest, Musas the Muses, majestas majesty, bonitas goodness.*

*Præter except nomina propria Græca Greek proper names, quorum genitivus singularis whose genitive case singular habet has penultimam the penultima brevem short : ut as, Arcas, Pallas, proper names, genitivo in the genitive case Arcados, Pallados.*

*Et and præter except accusativos plurales the accusative cases plural formatos formed Græco more in the Greek manner : ut as, heros a hero, heroas ; gigas a giant, gigantas.*

II. *Finitas es words ending in es longa sunt are long : ut as, Anchises the father of Æneas, sedes thou sittest, doces thou teachest, patres fathers.*

*Nomina in es nouns ending in es tertiæ inflectionis of the third declension, quæ which corripiunt make short penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing excipiuntur are excepted : ut as, miles a soldier, seges standing corn, dives rich. Sed but aries a ram, abies a fir-tree, paries the wall of a house, Ceres the goddess of corn, et and pes a foot, una cum compositis together with its compounds, ut as, bipes having two feet, tripes having three, longa sunt are long.*

*Quoque also es thou art, a from sum I am, una cum compositis together with its compounds, corripitur is made short : ut as, potes thou art able, ades thou art present, prodes thou profitest, obes thou hinderest : quibus to which penes in the power of potest may adjungi be added.*

*Item also neutra words of the neuter gender, et and nominativi plurales the nominative cases plural Græcorum of certain Greek words : ut as, hippomanes a raging humour in mares, cacoëthes an ill habit, Cyclopes giants so called, Naiades fairies of rivers and fountains.*

III. *Finita is words ending in is brevia sunt are short : ut as, Paris a proper name, panis bread, tristis sorrowful, hilaris merry.*

I. *Excipe except obliquos casus plurales the oblique cases plural in is ending in is, qui which producuntur are made long : ut as, musis the dative and ablative case plural a of*

*musa a muse or song, mensis, a of mensa a table, dominis to or by lords, templis temples, et and quis, pro for quibus whom.*

2. Item also *producentia such words as make long penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing* : ut *as, Samnis a Samnite, Salamis an isle by Athens* ; *genitivo in the genitive case, Samnitis, Salaminis.*

3. Et item *and also omnia monosyllaba all monosyllables* : ut *as, vis strength, lis strife* : *præter except is he et and quis who nominativos in the nominative case, et and bis twice apud Ovidium in Ovid.*

*Secunda persona singularis the second person singular præsentis activi of the present active quartæ conjugationis of the fourth conjugation producit is makes is long* : ut *as, audis you hear* ; sic *so possis you may be able, velis you may be willing, nolis you may be unwilling, malis you may prefer.*

*Secundæ personæ singulares the second persons singular futuri secundi activi indicativi of the second future indicative active, et and perfecti subjunctivi of the perfect subjunctive, faciunt make is commune is common* : ut *as, feceris you will have made, dederis you may have given.*

(a.) Porro *moreover in his temporibus in these tenses secunda persona pluralis the second person plural habet has penultimam the penultima communem common* : ut *as, dixeritis you will have said, transieritis you will have passed.*

*Gratis for nothing et and foris out of doors producant ultimam make the last syllable long.*

IV. *Os finita words ending in os producantur are made long* : ut *as, honos honour, nepos a grandson, dominos lords, servos servants.*

*Præter except compos he that hath ability or power in something, impos that is unable, or not having power, os ossis a bone, et and exos without bones.*

Et *and nomina propria proper names derivata derived a Græcis from Greek names in os* : ut *as, Delos an isle in the Ægean sea, Chaos a confused heap of things, Pallados the genitive case of Pallas Minerva, Phyllidos the genitive case of Phyllis, a proper name.*

v. *Us finita words ending in us corripiuntur are made short* : ut *as, famulus a man-servant, regius royal, tempus time, amamus we love.*

*Producentia words that make long penultimam the last syllable but one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case in-*

*creasing excipiuntur are excepted : ut as, salus health, tellus the earth ; genitivo in the genitive case, salutis, telluris.*

*Etiam also omnes voces all words quartæ inflectionis of the fourth declension in us ending in us longæ sunt are long, præter except nominativum the nominative et and vocativum the vocative case singulares in the singular number : ut as, genitivo singulari in the genitive case singular manus of a hand ; nominativo, accusativo, vocativo plurali in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases plural manus hands.*

*Etiam also monosyllaba monosyllables accedunt are added his to these : ut as, crus the leg, from the knee to the ancle, thus frankincense, mus a mouse, sus a sow.*

*Et item and also Græca Greek words per ovc diphthongum ending with the diphthong ou, cujuscunque fuerint casûs of whatever case they be : ut as, nominativo in the nominative case Panthus, Melampus, proper names ; genitivo in the genitive case, Sapphûs, Cliûs, proper names.*

*VI. Ys finita words ending in ys corripiuntur are short : ut as, Itys Itys.*

*XI. U finita omnia all words ending in u producuntur are made long : ut as, manu the ablative case of manus a hand, genu a knee, amatu to be loved, diu a long time.*

*XII. Y finita nouns ending in y corripiuntur are short : ut as, Tiphy Tiphys.*









**HOME USE  
CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT  
MAIN LIBRARY**

This book is due on the last date stamped below.  
1-month loans may be renewed by calling 642-3405.  
6-month loans may be recharged by bringing books  
to Circulation Desk.

Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior  
to due date.

**ALL BOOKS ARE SUBJECT TO RECALL 7 DAYS  
AFTER DATE CHECKED OUT.**

*Occidental College*

**INTER-LIBRARY  
LOAN**

**JAN 31 1974**

LD21-A30m-7.'73  
(R2275810)476-A-32

**General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley**

YA 00074

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C045912404

124208

124208

